CAMPBELL'S EDUCATIONAL SERIES

CANADA PUBLISHING COMPANY.

CLASSICS

CÆSARI BELLUM BRITANNICUM.

NOTES AND VOCABULARY.

30

John Fletcher

CÆSAR'S

BELLUM BRITANNICUM,

(*Lib. IV. c. 20.—36: V, c. 8.—23.*)

AND THE

NINE INTERVENING CHAPTERS;

WITH

EXPLANATORY NOTES, A COPIOUS VOCABULARY
AND NUMEROUS GRAMMATICAL
REFERENCES.

BY

J. MURISON DUNN, B.A., LL.B.,

(*University of Toronto.*)

HEAD MASTER, WELLAND HIGH SCHOOL.

Toronto:
CANADA PUBLISHING COMPANY.
(LIMITED).
1881.

PREFACE.

The present volume contains not only the Bellum Britannicum, applying that name to the portions of Cæsar's work contained in Lib. iv. c. 20–36 : v. c. 8–23, but also the nine intervening chapters.

The notes are full and are intended to furnish, not only the aids necessary for mastering the difficulties of construction and idiom, but also such other information as will enable the reader to appreciate the events recorded in the text. The references to Harkness's Latin Grammar and Smith's Smaller Latin Grammar will, it is hoped, assist the student in acquiring a clear insight into the Syntax of the Latin language. Much time and labor have been spent in making the vocabulary complete, with regard to both the derivation and the meaning of the words.

In short, it has been the Editor's aim to produce such a work as will be suited to the wants, not only of High School students, but also of such as may not have the advantage of a teacher.

J. M. D.

Welland, August 10th, 1881.

INTRODUCTION.

The origin of the name Cæsar is not clearly known, but it is probably akin to the Latin Cæsaries, and the Sanskrit Kesa, "hair," it being a common Roman custom for a family to derive its name from some marked personal peculiarity in one of its ancestors.

The full name of the subject of the sketch was Caius Julius Cæsar. He was born a century before the Christian era (B. C. 100). His family was illustrious, not only for its antiquity, but also for the services of its members to the Republic. At an early age Cæsar lost his father, and upon his mother Aurelia, a woman of sterling virtues and rare intelligence, devolved the task of educating the future dictator and of moulding his character. Cæsar was closely connected with the popular party by the marriage of his aunt Julia with the great Marius, and in consequence was regarded with distrust by Sylla, then at the height of his power. The astute tyrant, intuitively as it were, soon recognised in the young Roman the dauntless spirit and boundless ambition which characterized him through life.

Cæsar's marriage with Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, who was the most noted leader of the Marian party, still further incensed Sylla, and the latter immediately issued an edict, that all parties who had allied themselves by marriage with the Marian party should sever that alliance by divorce. Many of the highest rank at once complied, and among these, the

afterwards celebrated Pompey the Great, but Cæsar boldly refused to divorce his young wife, and treated the tyrant's decree with contempt. Such was Sylla's rage at this defiance of his despotic power that Cæsar was proscribed and deprived of office, his property being confiscated. He was forced to leave Rome and lie for a time in concealment. But warm and influential friends extorted a reluctant pardon from Sylla, who is reported to have said: "Be assured friends, that he for whom you plead will one day ruin the cause for which we fought, for in Cæsar are many Mariuses."

Though pardoned, Cæsar did not deem it advisable to return to Rome until Sylla's death, B.C. 78. At the age of twenty-two he prosecuted Dolabella for extortion and gained considerable renown as an orator. To thoroughly prepare himself for a public career, he proceeded to Rhodes, then the principal seat of learning and oratory, and there he became master of those graces of style and artifices of rhetoric which so often aided him in gaining the people's favor.

At the age of thirty-two (B.C. 68), Cæsar was elected quaestor, having previously filled the offices of pontiff and military tribune. In B.C. 65, he was elected aedile, in which capacity he gave unmistakable signs of his ambitious aspirations. While other aediles had amused the people with splendid games and regaled them with sumptuous feasts, Caesar far surpassed his predecessors. Never before had the people of Rome witnessed such magnificent shows and gladiatorial contests; and the consequence was that in less than a year the aedile contracted debts to the amount of eight millions of dollars. But he effectually accomplished his purpose, and his popularity was unbounded.

Cæsar was praetor, B.C. 62, and was sent the following

year into Spain as pro-praetor. Here he gave strong proofs of his military genius and executive ability. On his return from Spain (B.C. 60) he stood for the consulship, and, notwithstanding the strong opposition of the aristocratic party, he was elected. Before entering, however, upon the duties of the consulship, he formed the coalition with Pompey and Crassus, usually known as the first triumvirate. By the passage of an agrarian law, dividing the Campanian plain among the poorer citizens, Cæsar gained the affections of this class; while he attached to his interests the *equites* or knights by relieving them of one-third the sum they had agreed to pay the state for the privilege of farming the revenues in Asia. He also united Pompey still more closely to himself by giving him his daughter, Julia, in marriage.

Thus, at the close of his consulship, Cæsar had no difficulty in securing for himself the proconsulship of Gaul for five years, which period was shortly afterwards extended to ten.

The nations of Gaul were warlike and numerous. They loved freedom and were inured to fighting. They had once sacked Rome, and three centuries after had imperilled the very existence of the Republic. The conquest of Gaul was, therefore, an undertaking of great difficulty; but Cæsar felt himself equal to the task, and the event justified his confidence. In turn, the Helvetii, the Belgae, and the Nervii were forced to yield. The Germans, who had hurried to assist the Gauls, were driven back with great slaughter; and all Gaul was reduced under Roman sway.

Cæsar then turned his attention to Britain; but as full particulars of his two invasions of that island are given in the text and notes, it is deemed unnecessary to refer thereto in this sketch.

On his return from his second expedition into Britain, Cæsar found that the Gauls had taken advantage of his absence and were in a state of revolt. These hardy warriors would not own themselves conquered; but forgetting ancient jealousies, they united against a common foe, under the leadership of Vincingetorix, one of their ablest princes. At Alesia, however, the Gauls were utterly routed, and the subjugation of Gaul was made complete.

Meanwhile, important political changes had taken place at Rome. The triumvirate no longer existed. Crassus had perished in the East; Pompey had become intensely jealous of his father-in-law, and the death of Julia snapped the last link which bound these two together. Pompey had re-joined the aristocratic party, and at his suggestion a decree was passed by the senate requiring Cæsar to resign his command, and disband his army on pain of being proclaimed an enemy of the Republic. Cæsar was at Ravenna when the news of the Senate's action reached him (Jan. 10th, B.C. 49). His course of action was speedily decided upon. With a single legion he crossed the Rubicon, the southern boundary of the province, and advanced into Italy. His fame had preceded him; recruits flocked readily to his standard. Towns and cities threw open their gates to him, and within sixty days after the passing of the Senate's decree, he entered Rome without opposition, amid the plaudits of the people. The Senate had fled, and he himself was master of Italy. Commissioning Antony to watch over affairs at Rome, he hastened into Spain, where he speedily defeated Pompey's partizans. In the following year Pompey was finally crushed in the battle of Pharsalia in Greece. Pompey himself fled into Egypt, pursued by his victor. Here Cæsar became involved

in the Alexandrine war, which ended in his placing the disputed crown upon the head of the fascinating Cleopatra.

Returning to Rome, he stayed but a few days, and then crossed over into Africa, where Scipio and Cato had collected the remnants of the Pompeian party. The contending forces met at Thapsus; Cæsar was victorious. At Munda, in Spain, about a year and a half after this, he defeated the sons of Pompey, and annihilated the last army his foes could rally against him.

Cæsar was now master of the Roman world. He had been honored with four triumphs, and was now declared perpetual Dictator. The victor displayed great clemency toward his opponents, and his conduct proved him to be in earnest when he said that he would make no difference between his own followers and those of Pompey.

Though after his return from Gaul, his time was occupied in military campaigns, he still was able to effect many important civil and political reforms. He corrected many abuses, equalized public burdens, regulated the calendar, enriched the public treasury, improved the courts of justice, and reformed, in many respects, the administration of public affairs. But while thus busied a conspiracy was set on foot against him, headed by men whose lives he had generously spared, and who professed to be his devoted friends. He was assassinated in the Senate-house on the Ides of March, B.C. 44.

Though many of Cæsar's writings have been lost, his Commentaries, written often amid the harassing duties of the camp remain to attest his ability as an author. Their simplicity and grace have been admired in all ages.

The student, for fuller details, is referred to Smith's "Classical Dictionary," and Plutarch's "Lives."

C. JULII CÆSARIS

DE BELLO BRITANNICO

(EX LIB. V. COM. DE BEL. GAL.)

I. Lucio Domitio, Appio Claudio consulibus, discedens ab hibernis Cæsar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere consuêrat, legatis imperat, quos legionibus præfecerat, uti, quam plurimas possent, hieme naves ædificandas veteresque reficiendas curarent. Earum modum formamque demonstrat. Ad celeritatem onerandi subductionesque paulo facit humiliores, quàm quibus in nostro mari uti consuevimus—atque id eo magis, quòd propter crebras commutationes æstuum minùs magnos ibi fluctūs fieri cognoverat—ad onera et ad multitudinem jumentorum transportandum paulò latiores, quàm quibus in reliquis utimur maribus. Has omnes actuarias imperat fieri, quam ad rem multùm humilitas adjuvat. Ea, quæ sunt usui ad armandas naves, ex Hispaniā apportari jubet. Ipse, conventibus Galliæ citerioris peractis, in Illyricum proficiscitur, quòd a Pirustis finitimam partem Provinciæ incursionibus vastari audiebat. Eò quum venisset, civitatibus milites imperat, certumque in locum convenire jubet. Quā re nuntiatā, Pirustæ legatos ad eum mittunt, qui doceant, nihil earum rerum publico factum consilio, seseque paratos esse demonstrant omnibus rationibus de injuriis satisfacere. Acceptā oratione eorum, Cæsar obsides imperat, eosque ad certam diem adduci jubet: nisi ita fecerint, sese bello civitatem persequut-

undique ex finitimis regionibus et, quam superiore æstate ad Veneticum bellum fecerat, classem jubet convenire. Interim, consilio ejus cognito et per mercatores perlato ad Britannos, a compluribus ejus insulæ civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, qui polliceantur obsides dare atque imperio Populi Romani obtemperare. Quibus auditis, liberaliter pollicitus, hortatusque ut in eā sententiā permanerent, eos domum remittit, et cum his unà Commium—quem ipse, Atrebatibus superatis, regem ibi constituerat, cujus et virtutem et consilium probabat, et quem sibi fidelem arbitrabatur, cujusque auctoritas in iis regionibus magni habebatur—mittit. Huic imperat, quas possit, adeat civitates, horteturque ut Populi Romani fidem sequantur, seque celeriter eò venturum nuntiet. Volusenus, perspectis regionibus, quantum ei facultatis dari potuit, qui navi egredi ac se barbaris committere non auderet, quinto die ad Cæsarem revertitur; quæque ibi perspexisset renuntiat.

XXII. Dum in his locis Cæsar navium parandarum causā moratur, ex magnā parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt, qui se de superioris temporis consilio excusarent, quòd homines barbari, et nostræ consuetudinis imperiti, bellum Populo Romano fecissent, seque ea, quæ imperâsset, facturos pollicerentur. Hoc sibi satis opportunè Cæsar accidisse arbitratus, quòd neque post tergum hostem relinquere volebat, neque belli gerendi, propter anni tempus, facultatem habebat, neque has tantularum rerum occupationes sibi Britanniæ anteponendas judicabat, magnum his obsidum numerum imperat. Quibus adductis, eos in fidem recepit. Navibus circiter octoginta onerariis coactis contractisque, quot satis esse ad duas transportandas legiones existimabat, quicquid præterea navium longarum habebat, quæstori, legatis, præfectisque distribuit. Huc accedebant octodecim onerariæ naves, quæ ex eo loco

ab millibus passuum octo vento tenebantur, quominus in eundem portum pervenire possent. Has equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Quinto Titurio Sabino et Lucio Aurunculeio Cottæ, legatis, in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum, ab quibus ad eum legati non venerant, deducendum dedit. Publium Sulpitium Rufum legatum cum eo præsidio, quod satis esse arbitrabatur, portum tenere jussit.

XXIII. His constitutis rebus, nactus idoneam ad navigandum tempestatem, tertiā fere vigiliā solvit, equitesque in ulteriorem portum progredi, et naves conscendere, et se sequi jussit: a quibus quum id paulo tardiùs esset administratum, ipse horā diei circiter quartā cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositas hostium copias armatas conspexit. Cujus loci hæc erat natura: adeo montibus angustis mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in litus telum adjici posset. Hunc ad egrediendum nequaquam idoneum arbitratus locum, dum reliquæ naves eò convenirent, ad horam nonam in anchoris exspectavit. Interim legatis tribunisque militum convocatis, et quæ ex Voluseno cognôsset, et quæ fieri vellet ostendit, monuitque—ut rei militaris ratio, maximè ut maritimæ res postularent, ut quæ celerem atque instabilem motum haberent—ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur. His dimissis, et ventum et æstum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo et sublatis ancoris, circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.

XXIV. At barbari, consilio Romanorum cognito, præmisso equitatu et essedariis, quo plerumque genere in prœliis uti consuêrunt, reliquis copiis subsequuti, nostros navibus egredi prohibebant. Erat ob has causas summa difficultas, quòd naves, propter magnitudinem, nisi in alto, constitui non poterant; militibus autem,

ignotis locis, impeditis manibus, magno et gravi armorum onere oppressis, simul et de navibus desiliendum, et in fluctibus consistendum, et cum hostibus erat pugnandum: quum illi aut ex arido, aut paulùlum in aquam progressi, omnibus membris expediti, notissimis locis, audacter tela conjicerent, et equos insuefactos incitarent. Quibus rebus nostri perterriti, atque hujus omnino generis pugnæ imperiti, non eādem alacritate ac studio, quo in pedestribus uti prœliis consueverant, utebantur.

XXV. Quod ubi Cæsar animum advertit, naves longas, quarum et species erat barbaris inusitatior, et motus ad usum expeditior, paulùm removeri ab onerariis navibus, et remis incitari, et ad latus apertum hostium constitui, atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis, hostes propelli ac summoveri jussit: quæ res magno usui nostris fuit. Nam, et navium figurā, et remorum motu, et inusitato genere tormentorum permoti, barbari constiterunt, ac paulùm modò pedem retulerunt. Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, maximè propter altitudinem maris, qui decimæ legionis aquilam ferebat, contestatus deos, ut ea res legioni feliciter eveniret, "Desilite," inquit, "commilitones, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere: ego certe meum reipublicæ atque imperatori officium præstitero." Hoc quum magnā voce dixisset, ex navi se projecit, atque in hostes aquilam ferre cœpit. Tum nostri, cohortati inter se, ne tantum dedecus admitteretur, universi ex navi desiluerunt: hos item ex proximis navibus quum conspexissent, subsequuti hostibus appropinquârunt.

XXVI. Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter; nostri tamen, quòd neque ordines servare, neque firmiter insistere, neque signa subsequi poterant, atque alius aliā ex navi, quibuscumque signis occurrerat, se aggregabat, magno opere perturbabantur. Hostes verò, notis omni-

bus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis, impeditos adoriebantur: plures paucos circumsistebant: alii ab latere aperto in universos tela conjiciebant. Quod quum animum advertisset Cæsar, scaphas longarum navium, item speculatoria navigia militibus compleri jussit, et, quos laborantes conspexerat, iis subsidia submittebat. Nostri, simul in arido constiterunt, suis omnibus consequutis, in hostes impetum fecerunt, atque eos in fugam dederunt, neque longiùs prosequi potuerunt, quòd equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Cæsari defuit.

XXVII. Hostes prœlio superati, simul atque se ex fugā receperunt, statim ad Cæsarem legatos de pace miserunt: obsides daturos, quæque imperâsset sese facturos, polliciti sunt. Unà cum his legatis Commius Atrebas venit, quem, suprà demonstraveram a Cæsare in Britanniam præmissum. Hunc illi e navi egressum, quum ad eos oratoris modo imperatoris mandata perferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula conjecerant: tum, prœlio facto, remiserunt et in petendā pace ejus rei culpam in multitudinem contulerunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignosceretur, petiverunt. Cæsar questus, quòd, quum ultro in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se petissent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignoscere imprudentiæ dixit, obsidesque imperavit: quorum illi partem statim dederunt, partem, ex longinquioribus locis arcessitam, paucis diebus sese daturos dixerunt. Interea suos remigrare in agros jusserunt, principesque undique convenire et se civitatesque suas Cæsari commendare cœperunt.

XXVIII. His rebus pace confirmatā, post diem quartum, quàm est in Britanniam ventum, naves octodecim, de quibus suprà demonstratum est, quæ equites sustulerant, ex superiore portu leni vento solverunt. Quæ quum

appropinquarent Britanniæ, et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subitò coorta est, ut nulla earum cursum tenere posset, sed aliæ eòdem, unde erant profectæ, referrentur; aliæ ad inferiorem partem insulæ, quæ est propius solis occasum, magno sui cum periculo dejicerentur: quæ tamen, ancoris jactis, quum fluctibus complerentur, necessario adversā nocte in altum provectæ, continentem petierunt.

XXIX. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset luna plena, qui dies maritimos æstūs maximos in Oceano efficere consuevit; nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas naves, quibus Cæsar exercitum transportandum curaverat, quasque in aridum subduxerat, æstus complebat; et onerarias, quæ ad ancoras erant deligatæ, tempestas afflictabat; neque ulla nostris facultas aut administrandi, aut auxiliandi, dabatur. Compluribus navibus fractis, reliquæ quum essent—funibus, anchoris, reliquisque armamentis amissis—ad navigandum inutiles, magna (id quod necesse erat accidere) totius exercitus perturbatio facta est; neque enim naves erant aliæ, quibus reportari possent; et omnia deerant, quæ ad reficiendas eas usui sunt, et, quòd omnibus constabat hiemari in Gallia oportere, frumentum his in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

XXX. Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britanniæ, qui post prœlium factum ad ea, quæ jusserat Cæsar, facienda convenerant, inter se colloquuti, quum equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse intelligerent, et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent, quæ hoc erant etiam angustiora, quòd sine impedimentis Cæsar legiones transportaverat, optimum factu esse duxerunt, rebellione factā frumento commeatuque nostros prohibere, et rem in hiemem producere, quòd, iis superatis aut reditu interclusis, neminem postea belli inferendi causā in Britanniam transiturum confidebant.

Itaque, rursus conjuratione factā, paulatim ex castris discedere, ac suos clam ex agris deducere cœperunt.

XXXI. At Cæsar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen et ex eventu navium suarum, et ex eo, quòd obsides dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicabatur. Itaque ad omnes casūs subsidia comparabat: nam et frumentum ex agris quotidie in castra conferebat, et, quæ gravissimè afflictæ erant naves, earum materiā atque ære ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur, et, quæ ad eas res erant usui, ex continenti comportari jubebat. Itaque, quum id summo studio a militibus administraretur, duodecim navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari commodè posset, effecit.

XXXII. Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine unā frumentatum missā, quæ appellabatur septima, neque ullā ad id tempus belli suspicione interpositā, quum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitaret, ii, qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant, Cæsari renuntiārunt, pulverem majorem, quàm, consuetudo ferret, in eā parte videri, quam in partem legio iter fecisset. Cæsar id, quod erat, suspicatus, aliquid novi a barbaris initum consilii, cohortes, quæ in stationibus erant, secum in eam partem proficisci, duas ex reliquis in stationem succedere, reliquas armari et confestim sese subsequi jussit. Quum paulo longiùs a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi, atque ægrè sustinere, et, confertā legione, ex omnibus partibus tela conjici. animum advertit. Nam quòd, omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento, pars una erat reliqua, suspicati hostes huc nostros esse venturos, noctu in silvis delituerant: tum dispersos, depositis armis, in metendo occupatos, subitò adorti, paucis interfectis, reliquos incertis ordinibus perturbaverant: simul equitatu atque essedis circumdederant.

XXXIII. Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnæ: primò

per omnes partes perequitant, et tela conjiciunt, atque ipso terrore equorum, et strepitu rotarum, ordines plerumque perturbant; et, quum se inter equitum turmas insinuaverint, ex esssedis desiliunt et pedibus prœliantur. Aurigæ interim paulatim ex prœlio excedunt, atque ita curru se collocant, ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum, in prœliis præstant; ac tantum usu quotidiano et exercitatione efficiunt, uti, in declivi ac præcipiti loco, incitatos equos sustinere, et brevi moderari ac flectere, et per temonem percurrere, et in jugo insistere, et inde se in currūs citissimè recipere consuerint.

XXXIV. Quibus rebus, perturbatis nostris novitate pugnæ, tempore opportunissimo Cæsar auxilium tulit: namque ejus adventu hostes constiterunt, nostri se ex timore receperunt. Quo facto, ad lacessendum et ad committendum prœlium alienum esse tempus arbitratus, suo se loco continuit, et, brevi tempore intermisso, in castra legiones reduxit. Dum hæc geruntur, nostris omnibus occupatis, qui erant in agris, reliqui discesserunt. Sequutæ sunt continuos complures dies tempestates, quæ et nostros in castris continerent, et hostem a pugnā prohiberent. Interim barbari nuntios in omnes partes dimiserunt, paucitatemque nostrorum militum suis prædicaverunt, et, quanta prædæ faciendæ atque in perpetuum sui liberandi facultas daretur, si Romanos castris expulissent, demonstraverunt. His rebus celeriter magnā multitudine peditatūs equitatūsque coactā, ad castra venerunt.

XXXV. Cæsar, etsi idem, quod superioribus diebus acciderat, fore videbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritate periculum effugerent; tamen nactus equites circiter triginta, quos Commius Atrebas, de quo antè dictum est, secum transportaverat, legiones in acie pro

castris constituit.] Commisso prœlio, diutius nostrorum militum impetum hostes ferre non potuerunt, ac terga verterunt. Quos tanto spatio sequuti, quantum cursu et viribus efficere potuerunt, complures ex iis occiderunt; deinde, omnibus longè latèque afflictis incensisque, se in castra receperunt.

XXXVI. Eodem die legati, ab hostibus missi ad Cæsarem de pace, venerunt. His Cæsar numerum obsidum, quem antea imperaverat, duplicavit, eosque in continentem adduci jussit, quòd, propinquā die æquinoctii, infirmis navibus, hiemi navigationem subjiciendam non existimabat. Ipse, idoneam tempestatem nactus, paulò post mediam noctem naves solvit, quæ omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt; sed ex his onerariæ duæ eosdem, quos reliquæ, portûs capere non potuerunt, et paulo infrâ delatæ sunt.

XXXVII. Quibus ex navibus quum essent expositi milites circiter trecenti, atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quos Cæsar, in Britanniam proficiscens, pacatos reliquerat, spe prædæ adducti, primò non ita magno suorum numero circumsteterunt, ac, si sese interfici nollent, arma ponere jusserunt. Quum illi, orbe facto, sese defenderent, celeriter ad clamorem hominum circiter millia sex convenerunt. Quā re nuntiatā, Cæsar omnem ex castris equitatum suis auxilio misit. Interim nostri milites impetum hostium sustinuerunt, atque ampliùs horis quatuor fortissimè pugnaverunt, et, paucis vulneribus acceptis, complures ex iis occiderunt. Postea verò quàm equitatus noster in conspectum venit, hostes abjectis armis terga verterunt, magnusque eorum numerus est occisus.

XXXVIII. Cæsar postero die Titum Labienum legatum, cum iis legionibus, quas ex Britanniā reduxerat, in Morinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui, quum propter siccitates paludum, quò se reciperent, non habe-

rent—quo perfugio superiore anno fuerant usi—omnes fere in potestatem Labieni venerunt. At Quintus Titurius et Lucius Cotta, legati, qui in Menapiorum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eorum agris vastatis frumentis, succisis, ædificiis incensis, quòd Menapii se omnes in densissimas silvas abdiderant, se ad Cæsarem receperunt. Cæsar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna constituit. Eò duæ omnino civitates ex Britanniā obsides miserunt; reliquæ neglexerunt. His rebus gestis, ex literis Cæsaris dierum viginti supplicatio ex Senatu decreta est.

C. JULII CÆSARIS
DE BELLO BRITANNICO.

(EX LIB. IV. COM. DE BEL. GAL.)

XX. Exiguā parte æstatis reliquā, Cæsar, etsi in his locis—quòd omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit—maturæ sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quòd, omnibus fere Gallicis bellis, hostibus nostris inde subministrata auxilia intelligebat: et, si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficeret, tamen magno sibi usui fore arbitrabatur, si modò insulam adîsset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, partūs, aditūs cognovisset: quæ omnia fere Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temere præter mercatores illò adit quisquam, neque iis ipsis quicquam præter oram maritimam atque eas regiones, quæ sunt contra Gallias, notum est. Itaque, evocatis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque quanta esset insulæ magnitudo, neque quæ aut quantæ nationes incolerent, neque quem usum belli haberent, aut quibus institutis uterentur, neque qui essent ad majorum navium multitudinem idonei portūs, reperire poterat.

XXI. Ad hæc cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret, idoneum esse arbitratus Caium Volusenum, cum navi longā præmittit. Huic mandat, uti, exploratis omnibus rebus, ad se quamprimum revertatur: ipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, quòd inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam transjectus. Huc naves

urum demonstrat. His ad diem adductis, ut imperaverat, arbitros inter civitates dat, qui litem æstiment pœnamque constituant.

II. His confectis rebus conventibusque peractis, in citeriorem Galliam revertitur, atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eò quum venisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis, singulari militum studio, in summā omnium rerum inopiā, circiter sexcentas ejus generis, cujus suprà demonstravimus, naves, et longas viginti octo, invenit instructas, neque multùm abesse ab eo, quin paucis diebus deduci possent. Collaudatis militibus atque iis qui negotio præfuerant, quid fieri velit, ostendit, atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire jubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam transmissum esse cognoverat, circiter millium passuum triginta a continenti. Huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum, reliquit: ipse cum legionibus expeditis quatuor et equitibus octingentis in fines Trevirorum proficiscitur, quòd hi neque ad concilia veniebant, neque imperio parebant, Germanosque transrhenanos sollicitare dicebantur.

III. Hæc civitas longè plurimùm totius Galliæ equitatu valet, magnasque habet copias peditum, Rhenumque, ut suprà demonstravimus, tangit. In eā civitate duo de principatu inter se contendebant, Indutiomarus et Cingetoris: ex quibus alter, simul atque de Cæsaris legionumque adventu cognitum est, ad eum venit; se suosque omnes in officio futuros, neque ab amicitiā Populi Romani defecturos confirmavit; quæque in Treviris gererentur, ostendit. At Indutiomarus equitatum peditatumque cogere, iisque, qui per ætatem in armis esse non poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditis —quæ ingenti magnitudine per medios fines Trevirorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum pertinet— bellum parare instituit. Sed posteaquam nonnulli

principes ex eā civitate, et familiaritate Cingetorigis adducti et adventu nostri exercitūs perterriti, ad Cæsarem venerunt, et de suis privatim rebus ab eo petere cœperunt, quoniam civitati consulere non possent; Indutiomarus, veritus ne ab omnibus desereretur, legatos ad Cæsarem mittit; sese idcirco ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse, quò faciliùs civitatem in officio contineret, ne omnis nobilitatis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam laberetur. Itaque esse civitatem in suā potestate, seque, si Cæsar permitteret, ad eum in castra venturum, et suas civitatisque fortunas ejus fidei permissurum.

IV. Cæsar, etsi intelligebat, quā de causā ea dicerentur, quæque eum res ab instituto consilio deterreret, tamen, ne æstatem in Treviris consumere cogeretur, omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomarum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus venire jussit. His adductis, in iis filio propinquisque ejus omnibus, quos nominatim evocaverat, consolatus Indutiomarum hortatusque est, uti in officio permaneret: nihilo tamen secius, principibus Trevirorum ad se convocatis, hos singillatim Cingetorigi conciliavit: quod quum merito ejus ab se fieri intelligebat, tum magni interesse arbitrabatur, ejus auctoritatem inter suos quam plurimum valere, cujus tam egregiam in se voluntatem perspexisset. Id factum graviter tulit Indutiomarus, suam gratiam inter suos minui; et, qui jam ante inimico in nos animo fuisset, multo graviùs hoc dolore exarsit.

V. His rebus constitutis, Cæsar ad portum Itium cum legionibus pervenit. Ibi cognoscit, quadraginta naves, quæ in Meldis factæ erant, tempestate rejectas, cursum tenere non potuisse, atque eòdem, unde erant profectæ, revertisse: reliquas paratas ad navigandum atque omnibus rebus instructas invenit. Eòdem totius Galliæ equitatus convenit, numero millium quatuor,

principesque omnibus ex civitatibus: ex quibus perpaucos, quorum in se fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquos obsidum loco secum ducere, decreverat; quòd, quum ipse abesset, motum Galliæ verebatur.

VI. Erat unà cum ceteris Dumnorix Æduus, de quo ab nobis antea dictum est. Hunc secum habere in primis constituerat, quòd eum cupidum rerum novarum, cupidum imperii, magni animi, magnæ inter Gallos auctoritatis, cognoverat. Accedebat huc, quòd jam in concilio Æduorum Dumnorix dixerat, sibi a Cæsare regnum civitatis deferri: quod dictum Ædui graviter ferebant, neque recusandi aut deprecandi causā legatos ad Cæsarem mittere audebant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Cæsar cognoverat. Ille omnibus primò precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliā relinqueretur; partim, quòd insuetus navigandi mare timeret; partim quòd religionibus sese diceret impediri. Posteaquam id obstinatè sibi negari vidit, omni spe impetrandi ademptā principes Galliæ sollicitare, sevocare singulos hortarique cœpit, uti in continenti remanerent; metu territare, non sine causā fieri, ut Gallia omni nobilitate spoliaretur: id esse consilium Cæsaris, ut, quos in conspectu Galliæ interficere vereretur, hos omnes in Britanniam transductos necaret: fidem reliquis interponere, jusjurandum poscere, ut, quòd esse ex usu Galliæ intellexissent, communi consilio administrarent. Hæc a compluribus ad Cæsarem deferebantur.

VII. Quā re cognitā, Cæsar, quòd tantum civitati Æduæ dignitatis tribuerat, coërcendum atque deterrendum, quibuscumque rebus posset, Dumnorigem statuebat; quòd longiùs ejus amentiam progredi videbat, prospiciendum, ne quid sibi ac rei publicæ nocere posset. Itaque dies circiter viginti quinque in eo loco commoratus, quòd Corus ventus navigationem impediebat—qui magnam partem omnis temporis in his locis flare

consuevit—dabat operam, ut in officio Dumnorigem contineret, nihilo tamen secius omnia ejus consilia cognosceret: tandem, idoneam nactus tempestatem, milites equitesque conscendere naves jubet. At, omnium impeditis animis, Dumnorix cum equitibus Æduorum a castris, insciente Cæsare, domum discedere cœpit. Quā re nuntiatā, Cæsar, intermissā profectione atque omnibus rebus postpositis, magnam partem equitatūs ad eum insequendum mittit, retrahique imperat: si vim faciat neque pareat, interfici jubet: nihil hunc se absente pro sano facturum arbitratus, qui præsentis imperum neglexisset. Ille enim revocatus resistere ac se manu defendere suorumque fidem implorare cœpit, sæpe clamitans, liberum se liberæque civitatis esse. Illi, ut erat imperatum, circumsistunt atque hominem interficiunt; at Ædui equites ad Cæsarem omnes revertuntur.

VIII. His rebus gestis, Labieno in continenti cum tribus legionibus et equitum millibus duobus relicto, ut portūs tueretur et rem frumentariam provideret, quæque in Galliā gererentur cognosceret, consiliumque pro tempore et pro re caperet, ipse cum quinque legionibus et pari numero equitum, quem in continenti relinquebat, solis occasu naves solvit, et leni Africo provectus, mediā circiter nocte vento intermisso, cursum non tenuit, et longiùs delatus æstu, ortā luce, sub sinistrā Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rursus, æstūs commutationem sequutus, remis contendit, ut eam partem insulæ caperet, quà optimum esse egressum superiore ætate cognoverat. Quā in re admodum fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui vectoriis gravibusque navigiis, non intermisso remigandi labore, longarum navium cursum adæquârunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus meridiano fere tempore: neque in eo loco hostis est visus, sed, ut postea Cæsar ex captivis comperit, quum

magnæ manûs eò convenissent, multitudine navium perterritæ (quæ cum annotinis privatisque, quas sui quisque commodi fecerat, amplius octingentis uno erant visæ tempore), a litore discesserant ac se in superiora loca abdiderant.

IX. Cæsar, exposito exercitu et loco castris idoneo capto, ubi ex captivis cognovit, quo in loco hostium copiæ consedissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictis et equitibus trecentis, qui præsidio navibus essent, de tertiā vigiliā ad hostes contendit, eò minùs veritus navibus, quòd in litore molli atque aperto deligatas ad ancoram relinquebat; et præsidio navibus Quintum Atrium præfecit. Ipse, noctu progressus millia passuum circiter duodecim, hostium copias conspicatus est. Illi, equitatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi, ex loco superiore nostros prohibere et prœlium committere cœperunt. Repulsi ab equitatu, se in silvas abdiderunt, locum nacti, egregiè et naturā et opere munitum, quem domestici belli, ut videbatur, causā, jam ante præparaverant: nam crebris arboribus succisis omnes introitūs erant præclusi. Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnabant, nostrosque intra munitiones ingredi prohibebant. At milites legionis septimæ, testudine facta et aggere ad munitiones adjecto, locum ceperunt eosque ex silvis expulerunt, paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longiùs Cæsar prosequi vetuit, et quòd loci naturam ignorabat, et quòd, magna parte diei consumptā, munitioni castrorum tempus relinqui volebat.

X. Postridie ejus diei mane tripartitò milites equitesque in expeditionem misit, ut eos, qui fugerant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris progressis, quum jam extremi essent in prospectu, equites a Quinto Atrio ad Cæsarem venerunt, qui nuntiarent, superiore nocte maximā coortā tempestate, propè omnes naves afflictas, atque in litore ejectas esse; quòd neque ancoræ funes-

que subsisterent, neque nautæ gubernatoresque vim pati tempestatis possent: itaque ex eo concursu navium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

XI. His rebus cognitis, Cæsar legiones equitatumque revocari atque itinere desistere jubet: ipse ad naves revertitur: eadem fere, quæ ex nuntiis literisque cognoverat, coràm perspicit, sic ut, amissis circitèr quadraginta navibus, reliquæ tamen refici posse magno negotio viderentur. Itaque ex legionibus fabros deligit, et ex continenti alios arcessiri jubet; Labieno scribit, ut, quàm plurimas posset, iis legionibus quæ sint apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, etsi res erat multæ operæ ac laboris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit, omnes naves subduci et cum castris unā munitione conjungi. In his rebus circitèr dies decem consumit, ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem militum intermissis. Subductis navibus castrisque egregiè munitis, easdem copias, quas antè, præsidio navibus reliquit: ipse eòdem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eò quum venisset, majores jam undique in eum locum copiæ Britannorum convenerant, summā imperii bellique administrandi communi consilio permissā Cassivelauno, cujus fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamesis, a mari circiter millia passuum octoginta. Huic superiore tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercesserant: sed nostro adventu permoti Britanni hunc toti bello imperioque præfecerant.

XII. Britanniæ pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos natos in insulā ipsā memoriā, proditum dicunt: maritima pars ab iis, qui prædæ ac belli inferendi causâ ex Belgis transierant; qui omnes fere iis nominibus civitatum appellantur, quibus orti ex civitatibus eò pervenerunt, et bello illato ibi remanserunt atque agros colere cœperunt. Hominum est infinita multitudo, creberrimaque ædificia, fere Gallicis consimilia: pecorum mag-

nus numerus. Utuntur aut ære, aut taleis ferreis, ad certum pondus examinatis, pro nummo. Nascitur ibi plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum; sed ejus exigua est copia; ære utuntur importato. Materia cujusque generis, ut in Galliā, est præter fagum atque abietem. Leporem, et gallinam, et anserem gustare fas non putant; hæc tamen alunt animi voluptatisque causā. Loca sunt temperatiora, quàm in Gallia, remissioribus frigoribus.

XIII. Insula naturā triquetra, cujus unum latus est contra Galliam. Hujus lateris alter angulus—qui est ad Cantium, quò fere omnes ex Gallia naves appelluntur—ad orientem solem, inferior ad meridiem, spectat. Hoc latus tenet circiter millia passuum quingenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem, quā ex parte est Hibernia dimidio minor, ut æstimatur, quàm Britannia; sed pari spatio transmissus, atque ex Gallia, est in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insula, quæ appellatur Mona; complures præterea minores objectæ insulæ existimantur; de quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt dies continuos triginta sub brumā esse noctem. Nos nihil de eo percontationibus reperiebamus, nisi certis ex aquā mensuris breviores esse, quàm in continente, noctes videbamus. Hujus est longitudo lateris, ut fert illorum opinio, septingentorum millium. Tertium est contra septentriones, cui parti nulla est objecta terra; sed ejus angulus lateris maximè ad Germaniam spectat; huic millia passuum octingenta in longitudinem esse existimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu vicies centum millium passuum.

XIV. Ex his omnibus longe sunt humanissimi, qui Cantium incolunt, quæ regio est maritima omnis; neque multùm a Gallicā differunt consuetudine. Interiores plerique frumenta non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt, pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnes verò se Britanni vitro

inficiunt, quod cæruleum efficit colorem, atque hoc horridiore sunt in pugnā aspectu : capilloque sunt promisso, atque omni parte corporis rasā præter caput et labrum superius. Uxores habent deni duodenique inter se communes, et maximè fratres cum fratribus parentesque cum liberis ; sed, siqui sunt ex his nati, eorum habentur liberi, quo primùm virgo quæque deducta est.

XV. Equites hostium essedariique acriter prœlio cum equitatu nostro in itinere conflixerunt, tamen ut nostri omnibus partibus superiores fuerint, atque eos in silvas collesque compulerint : sed, compluribus interfectis, cupidiùs insequuti nonnullos ex suis amiserunt. At illi, intermisso spatio, imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitione castrorum, subitò se ex silvis ejecerunt, impetuque in eos facto, qui erant in statione pro castris collocati, acriter pugnaverunt : duabusque submissis cohortibus a Cæsare, atque his primis legionum duarum, quum hæ, perexiguo intermisso loci spatio inter se, constitissent, novo genere pugnæ perterritis nostris, per medios audacissimè perruperunt, seque inde incolumes receperunt. Eo die Quintus Laberius Durus, tribunus militum, interficitur. Illi, pluribus immissis cohortibus, repelluntur.

XVI. Toto hoc in genere pugnæ, quum sub oculis omnium ac pro castris dimicaretur, intellectum est, nostros propter gravitatem armaturæ—quòd neque insequi cedentes possent, neque ab signis discedere auderent—minùs aptos esse ad hujus generis hostem ; equites autem magno cum periculo dimicare, propterea quòd illi etiam consultò plerumque cederent, et, quum paulùm ab legionibus nostros removissent, ex essedis desilirent, et pedibus dispari prœlio contenderent. Equestris autem prœlii ratio et cedentibus et insequentibus par atque idem periculum inferebat. Accedebat huc, ut nunquam conferti, sed rari magnisque invervallis prœliarentur,

stationesque dispositas haberent, atque alios alii deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentes defatigatis succederent.

XVII. Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus constiterunt, rarique se ostendere et leniùs, quàm pridie, nostros equites prœlio lacessere cœperunt. Sed meridie, quum Cæsar pabulandi causā tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum Caio Trebonio legato missiset, repentè ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt, sic, uti ab signis legionibusque non absisterent. Nostri, acriter in eos impetu facto, repulerunt, neque finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad subsidio confisi equites, quum post se legiones viderent, præcipites hostes egerunt: magnoque eorum numero interfecto, neque sui colligendi, neque consistendi, aut ex essedis desiliendi facultatem dederunt. Ex hac fugā protinus, quæ undique convenerant, auxilia discesserunt: neque post id tempus unquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contenderunt.

XVIII. Cæsar, cognito consilio eorum, ad flumen Tamesin in fines Cassivelauni exercitum duxit; quod flumen uno omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc ægre, transiri potest. Eò quum venisset, animum advertit ad alteram fluminis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas: ripa autem erat acutis sudibus præfixis munita; ejusdemque generis sub aquā defixæ sudes flumine tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque, Cæsar, præmisso equitatu, confestim legiones subsequi jussit. Sed eā celeritate atque eo impetu milites ierunt, quum capite solo ex aquā exstarent, ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere non possent, ripasque dimitterent ac se fugæ mandarent.

XIX. Cassivelaunus, ut suprà demonstravimus, omni depositā spe contentionis, dimissis amplioribus copiis, millibus circiter quatuor essedariorum relictis, itinera

nostra servabat, paululumque ex viā excedebat, locisque impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat, atque iis regionibus, quibus nos iter facturos cognoverat, pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellebat: et, quum equitatus noster, liberiùs prædandi vastandique causā, se in agros effunderet, omnibus viis notis semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittebat, et magno cum periculo nostrorum equitum cum iis confligebat, atque hoc metu latiùs vagari prohibebat. Relinquebatur, ut neque longiùs ab agmine legionum discedi Cæsar pateretur, et tantùm in agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus noceretur, quantùm labore atque itinere legionarii milites efficere poterant.

XX. Interim Trinobantes, propè firmissima earum regionum civitas—ex quā Mandubratius adolescens, Cæsaris fidem sequutus, ad eum in continentem Galliam venerat; cujus pater Imanuentius in eā civitate regnum obtinuerat, interfectusque erat a Cassivelauno, ipse fugā mortem vitaverat—legatos ad Cæsarem mittunt, pollicenturque, sese ei dedituros atque imperata facturos: petunt, ut Mandubratium ab injuriā Cassivelauni defendat, atque in civitatem mittat, qui præsit imperiumque obtineat. His Cæsar imperat obsides quadraginta frumentumque exercitui, Mandubratiumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsides ad numerum frumentaque miserunt.

XXI. Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum injuria prohibitis, Cenimagni, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi, legationibus missis sese Cæsari dedunt. Ab his cognoscit, non longè ex eo loco oppidum Cassivelauni abesse, silvis paludibusque munitum, quò satìs magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convenerit. (Oppidum autem Britanni vocant, quum silvas impeditas vallo atque fossa munierunt, quò incursionis hostium vitandæ causā convenire consuêrunt). Eò proficiscitur

cum legionibus: locum reperit egregiè naturā atque opere munitum; tamen hunc duabus ex partibus oppugnarè contendit. Hostes, paulisper morati, militum nostrorum impetum non tulerunt, seseque aliā ex parte oppidi ejecerunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multique in fugā sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

XXII. Dum hæc in his locis geruntur, Cassivelaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprà demonstravimus, quibus regionibus quatuor reges præerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segonax, nuntios mittit, atque his imperat, uti, coactis omnibus copiis, castra navalia de improviso adoriantur atque oppugnent. Ii quum ad castra venissent, nostri, eruptione factā, multis eorum interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorige, suos incolumes reduxerunt. Cassivelaunus, hoc prœlio nuntiato, tot detrimentis acceptis, vastatis finibus, maximè etiam permotus defectione civitatum, legatos per Atrebatem Commium de deditione ad Cæsarem mittit. Cæsar, quum statuisset hiemem in continenti propter repentinos Galliæ motūs agere, neque multum æstatis superesset, atque id facile extrahi posse intelligeret, obsides imperat, et, quid in annos singulos vectigalis Populo Romano Britannia penderet, constituit; interdicit atque imperat Cassivelauno, ne Mandubratio, neu Trinobantibus bellum faciat.

XXIII. Obsidibus acceptis, exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invenit refectas. His deductis, quòd et captivorum magnum numerum habebat, et nonnullæ tempestate deperierant naves, duobus commeatibus exercitum reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium numero, tot navigationibus, neque hoc, neque superiore anno, ulla omnino navis, quæ milites portaret, desideraretur: at ex iis, quæ inanes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur, et prioris commeatūs expositis militibus, et quas postea Labienus faciendas

curaverat numero sexaginta, perpaucæ locum caperent; reliquæ fere omnes rejicerentur. Quas quum aliquamdiu Cæsar frustra exspectâsset, ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, quòd æquinoctium suberat, necessariò angustiùs milites collocavit, ac, summā tranquillitate consequutā, secundā initā quum solvisset vigiliā, primā luce terram attigit, omnesque incolumes naves perduxit.

NOTES.

CAESARIS COMMENTARII, *Caesar's Commentaries.* The term *commentarii* as here used is applicable to any simple and concise chronicle of events. Caesar, in his seven books of Commentaries on the Gallic War, has given a concise, but no doubt somewhat partial account of seven campaigns waged by himself in Gaul. Each book is a journal of one year. The *Bellum Britannicum*, which comprises portions of the fourth and fifth books, may be looked upon as a kind of episode, separable indeed from [illegible] in story, but yet rising naturally out of it.

BOOK FOURTH.

IN THE CONSULSHIP OF CN. POMPEIUS MAGNUS AND M. LICINIUS CRASSUS. B. C. 55.

I. EXPEDITION INTO BRITAIN, XX—XXXVI.

II. WAR WITH THE MORINI AND THE MENAPII, XXXVII, XXXVIII.

XX.

CAESAR RESOLVES TO CROSS INTO BRITAIN.

1. EXIGUA - - - RELIQUA, *as* (only) *a small part of the summer was remaining*, lit. *a small part of the summer being left.* Ab. Abs. H. 431; S. 332. Beginners must be particularly attentive to the various modes in which the Latin Ablative Absolute is rendered. As there is no Perfect Participle Active (i. e. Transitive) in Latin, except in the case of Deponent verbs, this Participle in English must in Latin usually be changed into the Passive, and put in the Abl. Abs. agreeing with what was before its object. Thus the sentence *Caesar, having landed the army, hastens against the enemy*, is changed into *Caesar, the army having been landed*, &c., and is rendered in Latin by *Caesar exposito exercitu, ad hostes contendit.* As the verb *sum* has no present Participle—a Verbal Substantive or Adjective often takes the places of Participle. Thus in the clause *exigua parte aestatis reliqua*—*being* must be supplied before *reliqua.* The Ab. Abs. is best rendered by a subordinate proposition introduced by *when, as, although, since* &c. The English Nom. Abs. corresponds to the Latin Ab. Abs. but it

is less extensively used. EXIGUA, Pred. Adj.; refers *to partc*. CAESAR: subject of *contendit* in the line 4, H. 367; S. 231.

2. IN HIS LOCIS, *in these places*, i. e., countries. Caesar refers to Northern Gaul. H. 421; I. S. 331. QUOD - - - VERGIT, *because all Gaul turns* (i. e. is situated towards) *the north*. *Quod* is followed by the Indicative, because Caesar states what he knows to be the fact. H. 520; I. S 486. GALLIA was divided into 1. *Gallia Citerior* or *Cisalpina*, Hither Gaul or Gaul on this side of the *Alps*, i. e. on the side towards *Rome*. II. *Gallia Ulterior* or *Transalpina*, Farther Gaul or Gaul beyond the *Alps*, embracing modern France, Belgium, Netherlands, the greater part of Switzerland, and the Rhine provinces of Germany. Under Caesar *Gallia Ulterior* was divided into *Celtica*, *Belgica* and *Aquitania*. The term *omnis* Gallia refers to *Gallia Ulterior*, and distinguished it as a whole from any of its parts. SEPTENTRIONES has been generally considered to be derived from *septem*, *seven* and *trio*, *an ox* and to mean the *seven plough-oxen*—referring to the seven stars near the North Pole, called Charles' Wain, also the Great and Little Bear; but Max Müller, the celebrated philologist in his "Lectures on Language," combats the Roman idea of seven oxen, and deems it untenable. He regards *trio* as having been originally *strio*, from the Sanscrit root STRI, to strew (or scatter), and hence a *strewer* (of light). According to Müller's view therefore, *Septentriones* simply means *the seven stars*.

3. MATURAE SUNT, *are early*, i. e. set in early. The Romans in Caesar's time had somewhat the same idea about Britain, that the people of Britain had—less than a hundred years ago—about Canada, viz.: that it was cold, barren, inhospitable, &c. TAMEN - - - CONTENDIT sc. CAESAR in line 1, *nevertheless hastened to proceed into Britain*. H. 379-4; S. 248. The reasons that prompted Caesar to invade Britain are not very clear. The alleged cause in the text seems to be but a mere excuse. Doubtless conquest and glory were the leading motives.

4. QUOD INTELLIGEBAT, *because he perceived*, i.e., discovered. OMNIBUS - - - BELLIS, *in almost all Gallic wars*, i.e., in all wars with the Gauls. H. 422, 1, 2); S. 338.

HOSTIBUS, &c., order, *auxilia subministrata* (esse) *nostris hostibus inde*, *that auxiliaries had been furnished to our enemies from that quarter*. The whole clause is Dir. Object. of *intelligebat*. HOSTIBUS, Dative Indir. Obj. H. 384; I. S. 287. AUXILIA is the Subject of *subministrata esse*. H. 545; S. 507. INDE, lit. *thence*, i. e, from Britain.

The student will best render a Latin Inf. clause in English by a Dependent Proposition introduced by *that*. Distinguish between *auxilium*, aid, help, &c., and *auxilia*, troops, auxiliaries. H. 132; S. 51.

5. ET SI TEMPUS - - - DEFICERET, *even if the season should be insufficient*, i.e., too short.

6. AD BELLUM GERENDUM, *for carrying on the war*, i.e., with the Britons, lit. *for the war to be carried on.* The Gerundive *gerendum* agrees with *bellum* like an adjective—though translated as if governing it. H. 562, 565 ; S. 534, 537.

7. MAGNO—FORE, *that it would be of great advantage to him.* SIBI USUI, both Dat. H. 390, I. ; S. 297. The subject of *fore* – the facts implied in the dependent clauses that follow, i.e., *his visiting the island*, &c.

SI - - - ADISSET, *if he only should go to* (i. e., visit) *the island.* Conditional sentence of the *first form* with the Fut. Perf. in the condition in the Direct Discourse and the Fut. in the conclusion -*si aderit* - - - *erit* - -, hence *adisset.* H. 532, 4. The same explanation applies to PERSPEXISSET, *should see into*, and COGNOVISSET, *should become thoroughly acquainted with.*

9. QUAE, the relative is in reality an adjective. In the text *quae* agrees with *negotia*, understood, *which things*, i.e., those mentioned in the last sentence. GALLIS, Dat. H. 391 ; S. 298.

10. NEQUE ENIM, is elliptical—*nor* (is this surprising) *for* : translate *nor indeed.* TEMERE, *commonly*, i. e., without some special object. MERCATORES, *traders.* ILLO, *thither*, i.e., to Britain. IIS IPSIS, i.e., *mercatoribus*, depends upon *notum est.* GALLIAS. Caesar means the different divisions of *Gallia.* He does not use the plural *Galliae* elsewhere. The mercatores in the several divisions of *Gallia* knew those parts of the British coast that were opposite to them.

13. ITAQUE, *and so* ; EVOCATIS - - - MERCATORIBUS, *though he summoned to him traders from all quarters*, lit. *traders having been summoned*, &c. Abl. Abs. H. 431 ; S. 332.

14. QUANTA ESSET : Indirect Question, depending upon *reperire.* H. 525; S. 431. QUANTA is Pred. Adj. after *esset*, and refers to *magnitudo.* H. 353 ; S. 223, Obs. NEQUE QUAE AUT QUANTAE, *nor what* (nations) *or how great.*

15. QUEM USUM - - - HABERENT ; *what system of war they practised*, or it may be *what experienee of war they had.*

QUIBUS - - - UTERENTUR, *what customs they used*, i.e., practised. H. 419 ; I. S. 315.

16. NEQUE QUI : construe with *portus.* IDONEI, *suitable, convenient ; idoneus* implies a natural fitness actually existing ; but one that requires to be observed and made available.

18. REPERIRE POTERAT, *was he able to find out*, i.e., could learn. The subject of poterat is *ille* (i.e., *Caesar*), understood, or rather implied in the termination of the verb. Distinguish between *reperire*, to find out with an effort, to discover, and *invenire*, simply to find, to come across.

XXI.

CAESAR SENDS CAIUS VOLUSENUS WITH A SHIP TO RECONNOITRE.

19. AD HAEC COGNOSCENDA, *to ascertain these* (particulars), i.e., to get an accurate knowledge of them, lit. *for these* (particulars), *to be ascertained.* H. 562, 565: S. 534, 537; construe with *praemittit.* PRIUSQUAM - - - FACERET *before he made* (lit. *should make*) *an attempt,* i. e., a descent upon the island. H. 523, II: S. 500.

20. IDONEUM - - - PRAEMITTIT *thinking Volusenus a suitable person he* (*i. e. Caesar*), *sends him in advance.* ARBITRATUS, the Perfect Participle of a Deponent verb is sometimes used of present time, i. e., translated as a present participle. H. 574, I. VOLUSENUS. There is very little more known of *Caius Volusenus Quadratus*, than that he was a military tribune, and afterwards a commander of the cavalry in Caesar's army.

21. NAVI LONGA, *a war ship,* i. e., a long, sharp-keeled vessel or galley, propelled by a single bank of fifty oars. The same name, however, was applied to ships of several banks of oars.

HUIC MANDAT, *he enjoins upon this* one. H. 384, 2, S. 287. UTI - - - REVERTATUR, *to return to him,* &c., Dir. Obj. of *mandat.* H. 558, 2, S. 451.

22. AD SE, *to him,* i. e., Caesar. H. 449, 1, S. 134. QUAMPRIMUM, *as soon as possible.* H. 170, 2: 444, 4; S. 353. IPSE, i. e., *Caesar.* H. 452, S. 356.

23. COPIIS, *forces,* but *Copia, plenty.* H. 132; S. 51. IN MORINOS *into* (*the country of*) *the Morini*; now Belgium. H. 435, 1; S. 137. QUOD INDE, *because thence.* i. e, from this part of Gaul.

24. HUC NAVES. Order, *jubet naves - - - et classem quam fecerat - - - convenire huc, he orders the ships from all parts of the neighbouring districts, and the fleet which in the preceding summer he had built for the war with the Veneti to come to this place.* NAVES and CLASSEM depend upon *jubet,* and are the subjects of *convenire.* H. 545, 551, II.; S. 511.

3. CONSILIO EJUS, i. e., *Caesaris.* PER, *through* (the agency of). The student must carefully distinguish the *Means* or *Instrument* from the *Agent by whom* and the *Intermediate Agent through whom* anything is done; for while the *Instrument* is expressed by the Ablative alone, the *Agent* is expressed by the Ablative with the preposition *a* or *ab,* and the *Intermediate Agent* by *per* with the Accusative.

5. AD EUM, i.e., *Caesarem.* QUI (= *ut ii*) POLLICEANTUR, *to promise,* Subjunctive of Purpose. H. 500; S. 478.

6. DARE, for *se daturos esse, that they will give.* H. 541, 2; S. 466. IMPERIO. H. 306; S. 292. OBTEMPERARE, for *se obtemperaturos esse, that they will submit* to, i. e., obey.

7. QUIBUS (=*his*) AUDITIS, *these having been heard* (by Caesar), i. e., Caesar having listened to them. When a sentence commences with a relative, it is often best translated by its corresponding demonstra-

tive. H. 453. POLLICITUS, *having promised.* The student will note particularly the difference of construction between the participle passive *auditis* (Abl.) and the participle deponent *pollicitus* (Nom.). H. 225, 465, II. 3; S. 522. UT – – – PERMANERENT, *to persist in that opinion*, i. e., to adhere to that determination. Accusative clause. H. 374, 4; S. 244.

8. DOMUM. Acc. of Lim. H. 379, 3, I; S. 260. REMITTIT: note the force of *re back.* UNA, *together;* an adverb.

9. COMMIUM depends upon *mittit*, in line 12. *Commius* was a chieftain of the Atrebates, whom Caesar, in return for some important services, had made king over that people. He was sent by Caesar into Britain for the purposes mentioned in the text. He some time after fought against the Romans, but was defeated and forced to submit to Antonius. QUEM REGEM CONSTITUERAT. H. 373; S. 245. ATREBATIBUS SUPERATIS, i. e., in the great battle of the Sambre. Book II.; chap. XXIII.

10. IBI, *there*, i. e., among the Atrebates.

11. SIBI depends upon *fidelem.* H. 391, 1; S. 298, 7. CUJUSQUE AUCTORITAS - - MAGNI HABEBATUR, and *whose personal influence in these districts was considered of great importance*, i. e., by Caesar, or, it may be rendered, *whose character was prized highly in those districts*, i. e., by the people? i. e., ranked highly among them? In the first rendering the clause *in his regionibus* will limit *auctoritas;* in the second, modify *habebatur.* MAGNI. Pred. Genit of Valuation. H. 403, 2; S. 281.

13. QUAS, &c., for (ut) *adeat quas civitates possit (adire).* Why is *ut* omitted before *adeat?* H. 493, 2. HORTETUR; supply *ut ille*, i. e., Commius, to *advise* (*them*).

14. UT FIDEM SEQUANTUR, to *seek* (*follow*) the *alliance.* SE, i.e., Caesarem. EO., thither, i.e., to Britain.

15. NUNTIET, refers to Commius, *to say.* The different clauses depend upon *imperat.*

16. QUANTUM FACULTATIS, *as far as the opportunity*, lit. *as of opportunity.* QUANTUM, subject of *potuit.* FACULTATIS; Partitive Genitive. H. 396, II. 3); S. 270. EI – – QUI NON AUDERET, *to him* (i.e., to one) *who did not dare.* H. 501, 1; S. 482. Some render, *to him since he did not dare.* H. 519; S. 476.

17. COMMITTERE, *to trust.*

18. QUAEQUE = *et ea quae.* RENUNTIAT *reports*, lit. *brings back word about.*

XXII.

CAESAR PROCURES VESSELS TAKES HOSTAGES FROM THE MORINI.

19. IN HIS LOCIS, *in those parts*, i.e., among the Morini.

20. LEGATI, *envoys.* LEGATUS literally means one deputed to any

office ; hence, it may be rendered, 1. an ambassador ; 2, a governor ; 3, a lieutenant, or second in command. The context will generally determine the meaning to be given.

21. QUI (=ut ii) SE EXCUSARENT, *to excuse themselves*. DE SUPERIORIS—CONSILIO, for their *past conduct*, lit. *concerning their action of past time*.

22. QUOD - - - FECISSENT, *that they as men uncivilized, and not acquainted with our custom, had made war against the Roman people ;* the clause explains *consilio*. HOMINES is in apposition to the omitted subject (*illi*) of *fecissent*. H. 363, 2 ; S. 214. CONSUETUDINIS. H. 399, 2, 2) ; S. 276, 2. The allusion is to the Roman custom of exercising humanity towards those who had submitted to the Roman authority, and of protecting them from the aggressions of the neighbouring States.

23. POPULO, Dat. SE, subject of *facturos esse ;* the clause depends upon *pollicerentur*.

24. IMPERASSET would be Fut. Perf. in the Dir. Discourse. H. 532, 4. HOC ARBITRATUS, *thinking that this*, i.e., the coming of the Morini, &c.

26. POST TERGUM, *behind him*, lit. *behind his back*.

27. FACULTATEM, the *opportunity*, *power*.

29. HAS—JUDICABAT, *considered that these engagements in*, (lit. *of*) *such trifling matters ought to be preferred by him to Britain*, i.e., he ought not to allow the comparatively unimportant matters then engaging his attention to interfere with his invasion of Britain. SIBI, Dat. of Agent. H. 388 ; S. 294. BRITANNIAE. H. 386 ; S. 292.

30. IMPERAT : subject is *Caesar* in line 25. QUIBUS, i.e., obsidibus. EOS, i.e., the Morini.

IN FIDEM RECEPIT, *received under* (lit. *into*) *his protection*.

31. NAVIBUS ONERARIIS, *transport ships*. *Navis oneraria* was of a heavy build and round hull, and generally whole decked, but had not an armed beak (*rostrum*), and was always worked as a sailing vessel without oars or sweeps. It was generally used as a store vessel of a fleet, or to carry freight, &c. COACTIS, *being collected*, i.e., pressed into service : observe the force. CONTRACTISQUE, *and brought together*. *Contractis* is more specific than *coactis*, and refers to the final assembling of the vessels—after they had been pressed into service—at the place of embarkation.

32. QUOT, ESSE SATIS EXISTIMABAT, *as many* (*vessels*) *as he thought to be sufficient*. QUOT. H. 178, 6. SATIS, here an Indeclin. Adj.

33. QUICQUID NAVIUM LONGARUM HABEBAT, *whatever* (lit. *of*) *ships of war he had ;* the clause depends upon *distribuit*. NAVIUM. H. 398, III.; S. 270; see page 1, l. 211.

34. QUAESTORI, LEGATIS, PRAEFECTISQUE, *to the quaestor, the lieutenants and prefects*. The *prefects* were commanders of the auxiliaries ; the *legati* were in charge of the different legions ; the *quaestor* was a Roman officer who had care of the money and its distribution : he was, in fact, the paymaster of the army, From the text it would

seem he had other duties. It is supposed that he acted as lieutenant of the legion which Caesar commanded in person, and acted in Caesar's absence as commander-in-chief.

1. AB - - - OCTO, *at the distance of eight miles* lit. *eight thousand of paces.* H. 378. 2. MILLIBUS, H. 178. S 69. PASSUUM. The Roman *passus* or pace, was 4,854 feet, and as a thousand paces made a Roman mile, the length of the latter was 4854 feet, *i.e.*, a little more than nine-tenths of an English mile. QUOMINUS POSSENT *from being able*, lit. by *which they were less able.* H. 499. S. 463. SABINO—COTTA.-- *Sabinus* and *Cotta* were two of Caesar's lieutenants, who were afterwards entrapped by Ambiorix, King of the Eburones, and both lost their lives in an ambuscade.

4. IN MENAPIOS; construe with *ducendum*, which agrees with *exercitum*—the latter depending upon *dedit*, *he assigned the rest of the army to . . . to be led.*

5. NON VENERANT, *i.e.* because they could not agree among themselves—some embracing Caesar's party, and others opposing it.

7. RUFUM depends upon *jussit.* EO – – – QUOD *such . . . as* lit. *that . . . which.* QUOD, subj, and SATIS pred. of ESSE.

XXIII.

CAESAR CROSSES OVER TO BRITAIN.

9. CONSTITUTIS *having been arranged.* NACTUS (from *Nanciscor*), sc. *Caesar* - - *having met with.*

10. TERTIA FERE VIGILIA, *about the third watch*, *i.e.*, about 12 p.m. The Romans divided the day and night each into four watches of three hours—commencing at 6 a.m. and 6 p.m. respectively.

SOLVIT sc. *naves*, *set sail*, *i.e.*, loosed his ships from the shore. Caesar probably set sail from port *Itius*, a little south of Calais: this port is expressly mentioned as the place from which Caesar started on his second expedition into Britain.

11. EQUITES, subj. of the three infinitives that follow: the clauses depend upon *jussit.* ULTERIOREM PORTUM, the farther port, *i.e.*, farther to the east; referring to the place where the eighteen vessels assigned to the cavalry had been detained. It is called *superior portus* in chap. xxviii.

12. A QUIBUS (= *a iis*) QUUM - - - ADMINISTRATUM *since this* (*i. e.*, what Caesar had ordered) *was performed by these somewhat tardily*, lit. *more tardily* (*than it ought to have been*). H. 517; S. 483.

13. IPSE sc. *Caesar himself*, *i. e.*, with the first ships. HORA QUARTA, *about the fourth hour*, *i. e.*, about 10 a. m., probably on the 26th of August. H. 711.

14. BRITANNIAM ATTIGIT *reached Britain.* Caesar is supposed to have landed at *Port Lemanis*—now Lynne—a little below *Dover.*

15. COLLIBUS. Gender? why? H. 107.1; S. 145.3. EXPOSITAS—CONSPEXIT, *beheld the forces of the enemy drawn up under arms* (lit. *armed*). *Expositas* may be considered Complementary of *conspexit*, and *armatas* Predicate after the Passive Participle *expositas*—agreeing with *copias*.

16. CUJUS=*hujus*. HAEC. Pred. Nom. *this*, i.e., as follows: ADEO - - - CONTINEBATUR, *the sea was confined by mountains so close* (to it). Note the force of *angustis* in the passage. The idea is that the space between the mountains and the sea was very small, so small indeed that a missile could be thrown from the upper parts (i. e. higher points) upon the shore (*uti ex - - - possit*).

18. HUNC sc. *locum*, Dir. Obj. of *arbitratus*, the latter referring to the subject of EXPECTABIT. AD EGREDIENDUM *for disembarking*: supply *navibus*.

19. DUM - - - CONVENIRENT, *till - - - arrived*, i. e. should arrive. H. 522, II; S. 497.

20. AD HORAM NONAM, *up to the ninth hour*, i. e. 3 P. M.

21. TRIBUNIS, sc. *militum*. Each legion had six military tribunes, who commanded in turn, each—according to some—one month, and according to others—two months at a time. In a battle, a tribune seems to have had charge of ten centuries or about 1,000 men. QUAE: supply *ea*, Dir. Obj. of *ostendit*.

23. MONUITQUE - - - ADMINISTRARENTUR—*and admonished them that all things should be performed at a beck and at the instant*. UT REI - - - HABERENT explains *ad nutum - - - administrarentur* and may be rendered: *as the system of military discipline* (and) *especially as naval operations demanded, since these* (*ut quae* i. e. *maritimae res*) *had a rapid and unstable* (i. e. ever varying) *motion*. The text is evidently corrupt. MONUIT - - - ADMINISTRARENTUR: verbs of admonishing, ordering, &c., are often followed by the subjunctive without *ut*.

24. UT QUAE, *since these* lit. *as* (they were things) *which* H.519; 3-1. For further information see Zumpt 565-726.

26. UNO TEMPORE *at the same time*.

27. SECUNDUM *favourable*; construe with *ventum* and *aestum*. SUBLATIS ANCHORIS, *anchors being weighed*. APERTO - - - CONSTITUIT, *he anchored* (lit. *stationed his*) *ships off an open* and *level shore*. H. 422, 1-2); S. 326. This was probably the portus *Lemanis* alluded to in page 3, line 14. *Aperto ac plano* does not mean simply that the shore was free from obstructions and level; but that the country running down to the shore was so level and open to the view, that the Romans could see into it for some considerable distance. Both of these conditions apply to the locality mentioned.

XXIV.

CAESAR'S DIFFICULTIES IN EFFECTING A LANDING.

30. BARBARI : subject of *prohibebant* in line 33.

31. PRAEMISSO EQUITATU, *having sent forward their cavalry* i. e, the Barbarians. Abl. Abs. It is doubtful whether the Britons had any cavalry, in the proper sense of the word. *Essedariis ;* supply *praemissis*, implied in *praemisso*. The *essedarii* (or chariot warriors) were those who fought from the *esseda*, a sort of two-wheeled car or chariot used by the Gauls and Britons. Some say that a scythe was attached, but Caesar does not say so. QUO GENERE, *which kind* (of force). H. 419, i, S. 315.

32. UTI CONSUERUNT, *have been accustomed* (*and still are*) *to use*. Mark force of Perfect. SUBSEQUUTI refers to *barbari*, *following close.*

33. NOSTROS, Acc. NAVIBUS, Abl. H. 422, 2, S 303. EGREDI, *from landing*, lit. *to go out from*. PROHIBEBANT, *sought to prevent*. Note force of Imperf.

35. NISI - - - POTERANT, *were not able to* (i.e. could not) *be moored except in deep water*. NISI, H. 508, 3. Distinguish between *poterant*, Imperf, and *potuerant*, Pluperf. MILITIBUS - - - OPPRESSIS - - - DESILIENDUM ET - - - CONSISTENDUM ET - - - ERAT PUGNANDUM : *the soldiers oppressed - - - had to leap - - - and to keep steady - - - and to fight*, lit. *it had to be leaped by the soldiers, &c.* MILITIBUS. Dative of Agent. H. 388, S. 294.

1. LOCIS. Abl. of Place. MANIBUS, H. 431, 1; S. 332, 1.

2. DESILIENDUM (ERAT), Passive Periphrastic Conjugation. H. 332. S. 102, II.

4. ILLI, *they*, i. e., the Britons. EX ARIDO, sc. *loco.*, *from the shore*, lit. *from a dry place*.

5. MEMBRIS—EXPEDITI, *free in all their limbs*, i. e., with a free use of, &c. H. 429 ; S. 311. NOTISSIMIS LOCIS, *in places perfectly known* (to them).

6. EQUOS—INCITARENT, *spurred on their horses accustomed* (to this work), i. e. trained to go into the water.

7. QUIBUS REBUS, *by which things*, i, e., circumstances. Abl. of Cause. NOSTRI PERTERRITI (participle), *our men dismayed*, ATQUE - - IMPERITI, *wholly unskilled in this kind of fighting* (battle). GENERIS. H. 399, 2 (2) ; S. 276, 2. PUGNA, which is akin to *pugnus*, a fist (and hence a fist fight), generally denotes a battle in which the combatants come to close quarters, but is used for any battle from a single combat to a general engagement of large armies. Its synonymes are, 1. *proelium*, an engagement of *troops*. 2. *acies*, when used of a battle, *a general engagement.*

9. ALACRITATE AC STUDIO depend upon, *utebantur*. H. 419; S. 315.

10. QUO refers to *studio* as antec. : understand an implied *qua* referring to *alacritate*. UTI, to *exert* or *practise*.

XXV.

HOW CAESAR EFFECTS THE DISEMBARKATION OF HIS TROOPS.

11. QUOD—ADVERTIT, *when Caesar perceived this*, lit. *when Caesar turned his mind to which.* *Quod* depends upon *ad* in *advertit*. Generally in classical Latin, *animum ad vertere* are combined into *animadvertere*. NAVES LONGAS, depends upon *jussit*, and is the subject of the passive infinitives *removeri, incitari* and *constitiri*.

12. QUARUM – – – INUSITATIOR, *both whose* (*i.e.*, as their) *figure was more strange to the barbarians; i.e.*, they had only seen the small trading vessels that had visited their shores. BARBARIS Dat. H. 391; S. 298.

13. MOTUS, (sc. *quarum*) – – – EXPEDITIOR, *their movement easier to use*, lit. *for* (to) *use, i.e.*, they were more easily managed. REMOVERI, *to be removed.* Distinguish from *submovere* in line 16. *Removere* means to *remove*, referring simply to a change of position, while *submovere* means *to dislodge, to take out of the way.*

14. INCITARI, *to be pushed on.* REMIS H. 414. 4. S. 311.

AD APERTUM LATUS, *towards* (*in the direction of*) *the open* (*unprotected*) *flank, i.e.*, where the enemy were most exposed.

15. INDE *thence, i.e.*, from their position. FUNDIS *by means of (with) slings.* *Tormentis.* *Tormenta* were engines for discharging heavy iron javelins, large stones, &c. The term itself is derived from *torqueo*, referring to the mode of working the engine. HOSTES depends upon *jussit*, and is subject of *propelli* and *submoveri*. QUAE (= *ea*) RES *this movement.* MAGNO USUI NOSTRIS FUIT, *was of* (lit. *for*) *great service* (*advantage*) *to our men.* H. 390, S. 297.

17. NAM BARBARI PERMOTI – – – CONSTITUERUNT *for the barbarians startled – – halted, i.e.*, in astonishment.

19. PAULUM MODO, *just a little;* observe the force of *modo*. PEDEM RETULERUNT, *retreated*, lit. *drew back the foot;* so *pedem inferre, to advance.*

20. NOSTRIS – – CUNCTANTIBUS, *while our men are hesitating, i.e*, about going to the shore. Abl. Abs. MAXIME, *chiefly.*

21. QUI sc., *ille, he who.* The eagle or main standard of the legion was borne by the chief centurion—*centurio primi pili* or *primopilus*—who was the oldest centurion in the legion. CONTESTATUS DEOS, *having supplicated the gods.*

22. EA RES, *this thing, i.e.*, what he was about to d LEGIONI. Dat. H. 385; S. 288. DESILITE, COMMILTONES; *leap, fellow soldiers.*

23. NISI VULTIS, *unless you wish*, H. 508-3. AQUILAM PRODERE. To lose any standard was considered a great disgrace by the Romans; but especially so if that standard was the chief one of the legion; hence the potency of the centurion's appeal. In more modern times there have been instances of soldiers defending their flags at the cost of their lives.

24. EGO CERTE MEUM OFFICIUM PRAESTITERO, *I at least will promptly discharge my duty.* Note the force of the Future Perfect, denoting speedy or complete accomplishment. H. 473-1.

26 SE PROJECIT, *he leaped* lit. *threw himself forward.*

27. COHORTATI INTER SE, *having exhorted each other*, H. 448-1.

28 DEDECUS, *dishonor;* the prefix *de* reverses the fundamental idea as the original word *decus=honor.* Reference is to the loss of the eagle. UNIVERSI *in a body;* adj. agreeing with *nostri.* HOS, *those* i. e. those in the water.

29. CONSPEXISSENT; supply *milites* as subject. SUBSEQUUTI *following close after* or *upon the others.* Note this; in Latin a participle and a finite verb may be rendered in English by two finite verbs i.e. *subsequuti appropinquarunt* may be rendered—*followed close after* (or *upon* the others) *and approached.*

30 HOSTIBUS. Dat. H. 386; S. 292.

XXVI.

THE BRITONS ATTACK THE ROMANS, BUT ARE PUT TO FLIGHT.

PUGNATUM EST ACRITER, *it was fought vigorously by both parties.* It is, however, better to make the substantive idea the subject i. e. *the battle was maintained*, &c. NOSTRI; subject of *perturbabantur* in line 35.

32. TAMEN, *however.* QUOD POTERANT *as they were able*, i. e. could. NEQUE INSISTERE, *nor to get firm footing;* lit. to *stand firmly.*

33. SUBSEQUI, *to keep close to.* ATQUE, sc. *quod*, *and in addition as.* For force of *atque* see page 20, line 1. ALIUS ALIA EX NAVI, *one from one ship and another from another*, lit. *another from another ship.* Note particularly this idiomatic construction, H. 459-1. QUIBUSCUNQUE - - - OCCURRERAT, *whatever standard they* (lit. *he*) *had met.* SIGNIS depends upon *occurrerat*, H. 386; S. S. 292—; but the whole clause depends upon *se aggregabat.* H. 386; S. 292. QUIBUSCUNQUE SIGNIS may be resolved into *iis signis quibus.* SE AGGREGABAT *kept attaching themselves* lit. *himself*, *se* referring to *alius*; i. e. kept joining. It is perhaps better to translate the verbs as if plural—as the idea of plurality is certainly implied in *alius.* For further explanations see Zumpt, 367, 712.

35. MAGNO OPERE, also written *magnopere*, *greatly.* HOSTES; subject of *adoriebantur.*

1. UBI CONSPEXERANT, *as soon as they had espied*, i. e. when they saw. ALIQUOS - - - EGREDIENTES, *coming from a ship one by one*, i. e. either straggling or in a small groups.

2. INCITATIS EQUIS, *having spurred on their horses.* Abl. Abs. IMPEDITOS (them), *embarrassed*, i.e., in their movement.

3. PLURES PAUCOS CIRCUMSISTEBANT, *many* (lit. *more*) *surrounded a few*. H. 165, I.; S. 66. ALII, *others*, i.e., of the enemy.

4. IN UNIVERSOS, *against our assembled forces*—opposed to *aliquos singulares*. ANIMUM ADVERTISSET, for *animadvertisset*.

5. SCAPHAS, *dugs*, or *jolly-boats*—carried on board larger vessels to be lowered and used as occasion required.

6. SPECULATORIA NAVIGIA, *spy sloops;* these were light and fast sailing, and were—as were also their tackling, the dress of the sailors, &c.—of a greenish-blue colour, in order to escape observation. MILITIBUS. H. 419, V. 2, I; S. 317.

QUOS—CONSPEXERANT, *whom he had seen in distress*, lit. *struggling*. Note force of *laborantes*. H. 551, I. 4; S. 523.

7. IIS SUBSIDIA (them, i.e., the vessels), *as assistance to those*, i.e., to their assistance. H. 390, II. 2. NOSTRI, i.e., those in the first rank.

8. SIMUL=SIMUL AC, *as soon as*. SUIS - - - CONSEQUUTIS, *all their companions having followed close upon them*, i.e., joined them.

10. DEDERUNT, *put*, lit. *gave*. Note *dare se in fugam*, is *to flee*, but *dare eum in fugam* = *to put him* (i.e., somebody else) *to flight*.

NEQUE = *sed non*. LONGIUS, *very far*, lit. farther than they did.

11. EQUITES. Reference is to the cavalry that had embarked in the eighteen transports mentioned in Chap. XXII. These had encountered storms, and had not been able to hold on their course (*cursum - - - potuerant*) and to reach (*capere*) the island.

12. HOC UNUM DEFUIT, *this one thing* (only) *was wanting*. *Defuit* generally takes the *Dative*. PRISTINAM, has the idea of coming up to the mark, or standard of his olden or former, i.e., his completely good fortune at war; hence, *usual*.

XXVII.

THE BRITONS SURRENDER TO CAESAR.

13. HOSTES; subject of *miserunt*. SIMUL ATQUE=*simul ac*. SE RECEPERUNT, *recovered*.

15. OBSIDES DATUROS, for *se daturos esse obsides*—depending upon *polliciti sunt*, they promised that *they would give hostages*. H. 551, 1, 2: 543; S. 511, 466. QUAEQUE = *et* (ea) *qua*.

16. UNA, *together*.

17. QUEM PRAEMISSUM ESSE, Dir. Object of *demonstraveram*, *who had been sent as I have shown*, lit. *I had shown whom to have been sent*. SUPRA: Chap. XXI. DEMONSTRAVERAM, the Perfect tense might have been used, but the Pluperfect is more exact, showing that this act was completed at the time of the past events just mentioned.

18. HUNC is the Direct Object, and ILLI the subject of *comprehenderunt* and *conjecerunt*. EGRESSUM (agrees with *hunc*), *having gone out*, i.e. after he had disembarked.

19. QUUM, *although*, or *while*. ORATORIS MODO, *in the character of an envoy*. The difference between *Legatus* and *Orator* seems to be this: The former always denotes a person deputed by a Sovereign or a State to transact some business of moment; the latter a person sent to perform some duty for his employers. *Legatus* is the generic, and *Orator* the special term; the former, therefore, may be used for *Orator*, but the latter not always for *Legatus*.

21. REMISERUNT: supply *eum*. IN PETENDA PACE. H. 566, II; S. 534, C. EJUS REI, *of this*, lit. *of this thing*, i.e., of the imprisonment of Commius.

22. IN MULTITUDINEM, *upon the mass*, i.e., the common people. PROPTER IMPRUDENTIAM, *on account of their indiscretion*, i.e., as it was merely an act of indiscretion, and nothing more.

23. UT IGNOSCERETUR. The construction of *ignosceretur* seems to be somewhat doubtful. The grammars generally give *ignosco* as one of the verbs governing the Dat.; Zumpt, however, leaves it out of his list. Authorities show that *ignosco* is both Trans. and Intrans. If we consider *ignosceretur* the regular Passive, the text may be rendered, *that it* (i.e., *ea res*) *might be pardoned*; but if *ignosco* be considered Intrans., *ignosceretur* can only be used Impersonally, and the construction will be *ut ignosceretur* (*ei* (i.e., *multudini*) *eam rem*) *that it might be pardoned* (*to it*, i.e., the multitude—*as regards that act*). Possibly it might be *ut ignosceretur ei rei*, as in Ovid, A., An. I., 249, we find *vitioque ignoscitur omni*. The first construction, i.e., *ut* (ea res) *ignosceretur*, is perhaps preferable; it is certainly the easiest.

24. QUOD, &c., Dir. Object of *questus*. QUUM, *although, after*. ULTRO—MISSIS—PETISSENT—*had of their accord*, &c., *sent—and sued for*. A participle and a finite verb may often be translated into English by two finite verbs. IN CONTINENTEM, *to the continent*, i.e., to Gaul.

25. IGNOSCERE IMPRUDENTIAE DIXIT—said that *he* (*se* understood) *pardoned their indiscretion*. H. 385, 551, I., 2; S. 292, 507.

DIXIT, IMPERAVIT; subject *Caesar*, in line 23.

26. PARTEM ARCESSITAM, *a part sent for*; depends upon *daturos* (esse).

28. PAUCIBUS DIEBUS. Abl of Time. H. 426; S. 324.

29. SUOS - - - IN AGROS, *their people to return to their lands, i.e.* to their homes and usual occupations as the war was at an end.

30. COMMENDARE, *to entrust for protection*. This word is sometimes, though incorrectly, rendered *to surrender*.

XXVIII.

CAESAR'S FLEET IN A STORM.

32. POST DIEM—QUAM, *on the fourth day after*. H. 427 3, F. 325. For fuller explanations, see Zumpt 476-478.

33. VENTUM EST sc. *Romanis*, the (Romans) came lit., it *was come.* H. 301, 1, 388, 1, S. 293.

34. SUPRA, Chap. XXII. QUAE SUSTULERANT, *which* (lit. *had*) *conveyed.* H. 472, 3.

35. SUPERIORE PORTU, *the upper port*; called also *ulterior portus* in chap. XXIII. QUAE QUUM, *when these, i.e.* naves.

1. BRITANNIÆ, H. 386, S. 292. VIDERENTUR, *were sighted, i.e.* seen.

2. NULLA EARUM *i.e.*, *nulla navis earum navium.* The gender of the Partitive adjective is generally the gender of the Genitive—H 396 (III. 2, 3), S. 273. A. L. P. C. 166, – CURSUM TENERE, *to hold on its course*: a technical expression.

3. ALIÆ REFERRENTUR, *some were carried back.*

4. ALIÆ DEJICERENTUR, *others were carried down.* QUÆ – – – OCCASUM, *which is farther to the west*, lit., *nearer to the setting of the sun*, H. 437, 1, S. 248.

5. MAGNO – – – PERICULO, *with great risk to* (lit. *of*) *themselves.* SUI, Objective Genitive, H. 393, 1.

6. QUÆ TAMEN, *which, notwithstanding.* ANCORIS JACTIS, *after casting* (or, although they had cast) *anchor.* Some connect *tamen* with *ancoris jactis*, and translate *yet casting anchor, i.e.* notwithstanding the violence of the storm. QUUM COMPLERENTUR, *as the ships were filling with water*, lit., by *the waves.*

7. NECESSARIO – – – PETIERUNT, *having through necessity – put to sea – in an adverse night* (according to some, *in the face of night*) *made for the continent.* The clause may, perhaps, be more clear if rendered thus: *these still cast anchor, but as they were being filled with water, and as the night was unfavourable, they put out to sea, and made for the continent.*

XXIX.

9. CAESAR'S FLEET SUFFERS SEVERELY FROM THE STORM.

9. NOCTE, H. 426, S. 322. ACCIDIT, H, 495, 2; 556 II. UT – – PLENA, *that it was full moon.* According to astronomical calculation this was on the night of the 30th of August, B. C. 55. QUI DIES, *which period, i.e.* which day of the month—or, when the moon was full.

10. CONSUEVIT: mark force of perfect, *is wont, i.e.* has been and is. AESTUS: these tides must have seemed wonderful to the Romans—accustomed as they were to the tideless, or nearly tideless waters of the Mediterranean.

11. ID, *this fact.* INCOGNITUM: though the Roman soldiers, no doubt, were ignorant of the existence of these tides, it is hardly pos-

sible that Caesar could have been. He may, perhaps be speaking generally. UNO TEMPORE, *at the one* (i. e., the same) *time*.

12. QUIBUS, *by means of which*. H. 414; S. 311. CAESAR - - - CURAVERAT, *Caesar had caused his army to be carried across*, i.e., from Gaul to Britain. A. L. P. C. 356.

13. AESTUS COMPLEBAT, *the tide began to fill*. Dir. Obj. *naves*, in line 12.

14. ERANT DELIGATAE, *had been fastened*, i. e., were riding.

15. AFFLICTABAT=*began and continued, to dash against each other*. Note the inceptive and iterative force of the verb, as also the force of *ad* in composition. NOSTRIS. H. 384, 1; S. 287.

16. ADMINISTRANDI sc. *eas*, *of managing them*. H. 563; S. 533. AUXILIANDI sc., *iis*. H. 385; S. 291.

17. FRACTIS *having been wrecked*. RELIQUAE QUUM ESSENT INUTILES, *since* (or *inasmuch as*), *the rest were unfit*. H. 517; S. 483.

19. MAGNA TOTIUS - - - FACTA EST, *great confusion throughout* (lit. *of*) *the whole army occurred*. ID QUOD. H. 445, 7; A. L. P. C. 36 b. NECESSE, refers to *quod*; only used in Neut. Sing. ACCIDERE; distinguish from *evenire*; *accidere* is said of events that take us by surprise; *evenire* of those expected.

20. ENIM, always follows another word, as do also *autem*, *quidem*, *quoque*, *vero* and generally *igitur*. H. 602, III.

21. POSSENT sc. *Romani*. *Deerant* (Imperf.) sc. *iis*.

22. USUI *of* (lit. *for*) *use*. H. 390, 21, II.; S. 297; Obs. QUOD—CONSTABAT, *because it was evident to all*, i. e., a settled fact with all. H. 520; S. 486.

23. OPORTERE sc. *eos*, *that it behooved them* i. e., that they would; *oportere* is Impersonal. Note that clause *hiemari* - - - *oportere* is the subject of *constabat*. HIS IN LOCIS, i. e., in Britain.

Caesar has been censured for making this descent upon Britain before obtaining an accurate knowledge of the country, and laying in a sufficient supply of provisions for his men. There does seem to be good ground for this censure, for unquestionably the situation in which Caesar found himself after the loss of his vessels was one of imminent peril. However, his genius and wonted good fortune came once more to his rescue and saved him.

XXX.

THE BRITONS PREPARE TO RISE AGAINST THE ROMANS.

25. QUIBUS REBUS COGNITIS, *these things* (i. e., the facts just stated) *having become known*, i. e., to the Britons, PRINCIPES; subject of *duxerunt* in line 32.

27. INTER SE COLLOQUUTI, *having held a conference*, lit. *having talked together among themselves*: refers to *principes*.
28. ROMANIS, Dat. H. 386; S. 292. Note: *esse* and its compounds except *posse* take the Dative.
29. COGNOSCERENT sc. *quum* (*when*) *they discovered*, i. e. inferred.
30. QUAE refers to *castrorum*. HOC, *on this account*, viz., *quod - - - transportaverat.*
31. OPTIMUM - - - DUXERUNT, *they thought the best* (thing) *to be done was.* The clause *rebellione - - producere* depends upon *duxerunt*, and is subject of ESSE; *optimum factu* being complementary after *esse*. FACTU. H. 570, 1; S. 544.
33. REM PRODUCERE, *to protract the war.* IN HIEMEM, *into the winter;* note the force of *in.*
34. IIS, i. e., *Romanis.* REDITU, i. e., *in Galliam.* H. 425; S. 303. NEMINEM TRANSITURUM (*esse*) CONFIDEBANT, *they were confident that no one would come across.* *Confido* generally takes the Dat. or Abl, but sometimes the Acc.
1. RURSUS here does not mean strictly a *second time;* it rather implies that the Britons were renewing their former hostility. EX CASTRIS, sc. *Caesaris.* SUOS - - - DEDUCERE, *secretly to withdraw*, (lit. *draw down*, i. e., to the coast) *their followers from their fields*, i. e., their homes. This refers to the assembling of the native forces just as *remigrage in agros*, at the end of Chap. XXVII., refers to the disbanding of them.

XXXI.

CAESAR COLLECTS SUPPLIES AND REPAIRS HIS FLEET.

3. AT CAESAR - - - TAMEN - - - SUSPICABATUR ID FORE, *but Caesar - - - yet - - - suspected that would happen.*
4. EX EVENTU - - - EX EO QUOD, *from the fate of his ships, and from the fact that.*
5. ID FORE. H. 545; S. 507.
6. ITAQUE - - - COMPARABAT, *and so he began to adopt* (lit. *prepare*) *precautionary measures* (lit. *aids or remedies*) *against all emergencies*, lit. *happenings.*
7. CONFEREBAT, *kept bringing in.*
8. QUAE NAVES EARUM = *earum navium quae.* H. 445, 8.
9. MATERIA UTEBATUR. H. 419, I.; S. 315. AERE: *aes* is generally rendered *brass*, but it was, more strictly speaking, a kind of bronze. The term, however, is indiscriminately used by Roman writers to denote copper, brass, or bronze. *Aes* seems to have been used more extensively than iron by the Romans in the construction of their vessels—not only the *rostrum* or beak of a vessel, but occasionally even the sides, being covered with this metal

10. QUAE; antec. *ea* (understood), depending upon *jubeat*. USUI, H 390, II. 2, S 297 obs.

11. QUUM, *since*. STUDIO, H. 414. S. 311. MILITIBUS Abl. of Agent. H. 414. S. 311. obs.

12. RELIQUIS – – EFFECIT, *he brought it to pass* (*lit. effected*) *that it was possible to be safely sailed* (*i.e.* to set sail in safety) *with the rest.* Note that *navigari commode reliquis*—is the subject of posset, *i.e.*, *to be sailed, &c.*, *was possible.*

XXXII.

THE ROMAN CAMP ALARMED—THE BRITONS ATTACK THE ROMAN FORAGERS.

14. LEGIONE MISSA, *the legion having been sent out.* EX CONSUETUDINE, *out of* (hence, *according to*) *custom.*

15. FRUMENTATUM, *to forage.* H. 569. S. 542.

QUAE – – – SEPTIMA, *which was called the seventh.* The legions were numbered as raised, and afterwards known by the numbers then assigned to them. Caesar had at this time eight legions under his command—two in Britain, the seventh and tenth; and six in Gaul, the eighth, ninth, eleventh, twelfth, thirteenth and fourteenth.

16. INTERPOSITA, *having arisen.*

17. QUUM AS, *since.* HOMINUM, *of the men, i.e.*, of the Britons. Some have held, however, in spite of the obvious meaning of the text, that the *Romans* were referred to. The meaning is that some of the Britons had not as yet obeyed their chieftains' call "to arms," but remained at their homes (*in agris*). ETIAM IN CASTRA, *even into our camp.*

18. VENTITARET: note frequentative force *kept coming frequently*, *i.e.*, went backward and forward. Some construe *etiam ventitaret.*

18. IN STATIONE, *on guard.*

19. CAESARI. H. 384, II. S. 287. PULVEREM, subj of *videri* (*was seen*). Note gender. QUAM CONSUETUDO FERRET *than usual*; lit. *than custom bore, i.e.*, warranted. QUAM FERRET. H. 496. 2.

20. QUAM IN PARTEM: note the repetition of the noun with the relative. This is common in Caesar's writings. Zumpt (743) says that "the repetition of the substantive is necessary when there are two preceding the relative, and when it becomes doubtful to which of them the relative refers." See also A. L. P. C. 29. ITER FECISSENT, *had pursued their march, i.e.*, had marched.

21. ID QUOD ERAT, *that which was actually the case*; explained by *aliquid – – – consilii.*

ALIQUID NOVI CONSILII, *that some new plan* (plot), lit. *something of a new plan.* H. 395. III. 2, 3); S. 270.

22. INITUM (ESSE), *had been entered into.* COHORTES, which depends upon *jussit*, is the subject of *proficisci* and *succedere.* IN STATIONIBUS,

on guard. One cohort generally guarded each of the four gates of the camp. A little explanation will make this clearer. A Roman camp was arranged with the greatest regularity, and fortified with the utmost care. It was usually square and had a gate on each side. The gate nearest to the enemy was called *porta praetoria*, and the one opposite to it, *porta decumana*. The gates at the sides were called *porta principalis dextra* and *porta principalis sinistra* respectively. The defences consisted of a trench or fosse, usually twelve feet wide and nine deep, and a rampart of earth thickly set with sharp stakes.

23. DUAS . . SUCCEDERE (he ordered) *two of* (lit *from* or *out of*) *the other* (six cohorts) *to take their places on guard.* He could spare only two cohorts to guard the gates, *i. e.*, each gate had only half its usual complement of guards.

24. ARMARI, lit., *to be armed* ; the verb seems here, however, to be used in the sense of the Greek Middle—*to arm themselves ;* not unfrequently so in Latin.

25. SESE, *him* i.e. *Cæsarem ;* depends upon *subsequi.* PAULO LONGIUS, *some short distance.*

26. SUOS - - - PREMI, *that his men were very hard pressed.* AEGRE SUSTINERE may mean either *held* (their enemies) *in check with difficulty*, or *maintained their ground with difficulty.*

27. CONFERTA (from *confercio*) LEGIONE, *the legion being crowded together.* H. 430 ; S. 332. CONJICI, *that—were being hurled* (upon it).

28. ANIMUM ADVERTIT=*animadvertit.* In the text, the Infin. clauses depend up *ad* in composition. See *ante.*

28. NAM QUOD, *for inasmuch as.*

29. DEMESSO, *having been reaped.* PARS—RELIQUA, *only one part was left*, i. e., from which corn could be obtained.

30. NOCTU *by night*, i. e., during the night : only in Abl. H 134.

31. TUM (*hostes*) SUBITO ADORTI (*nostros*) DISPERSOS—OCCUPATOS—PERTURBAVERUNT, *then the enemy having suddenly attacked* (*our men*)—*scattered—occupied—threw into confusion.*

33. INCERTIS ORDINIBUS *as their ranks were uncertain.* H. 431 ; S. 332. In the confusion of the moment, the Romans could not readily find their places in the ranks.

XXXIII.

HOW THE BRITONS FOUGHT WITH THEIR WAR CHARIOTS.

35. GENUS EX ESSEDIS PUGNÆ, *their plan of fighting from chariots.* HOC EST, *is this*, i. e., as follows, PRIMO . . . PEREQUITANT, in *in the first place they drive hither and thither in all directions.* Why Present Tense? H. 467, II. ; S. 392.

2. IPSO TERRORE EQUORUM, *by the very terror caused by their horses*, lit. *of their horses.* H. 396, I. Anthon, however, makes *equorum* the

Obj. Gent., and not the Subj, and translates "occasioned to the horses of the foe." The rendering we give is decidedly preferable. PLERUMQUE *and generally*.

3. QUUM SE INSINUAVERINT, *when they have insinuated themselves*, i. e., have succeeded in working their way. TURMAS *bodies of horse.* Each legion usually had a contingent of three hundred cavalry, called *justus equitatus*, or *ala*. This was divided into ten *turmae*, or troops, of thirty each, and each *turma* into three *decuriae*, or bodies of ten men.

4. PEDIBUS, ON FOOT.

5. AURIGAE, *the charioteers*. Among the Britons, as among the ancient Greeks—each war chariot, or car, seems to have held two persons, the *auriga*, or driver, and the *essedarius*, or fighter.

6. ITA—COLLOCANT, and *place themselves in such a position* (ita) *with their chariots*. UT, SI ILLI (i. e., essedarii) *that the essedarii if they*, lit. *that* (*they*) *if these*.

7. EXPEDITUM - - - RECEPTUM, *a ready retreat to their friends*.

8. ITA MOBILITATEM - - - PRAESTANT, *thus they display in battles the active movement of horse* (horsemen) (and) *the steadiness* of *infantry* (foot-soldiers), i. e., they combine the advantages of cavalry and infantry. TANTUM EFFICIUNT, *they accomplish so much*, i. e., attain such efficiency.

9. EXERCITATIONE, supply *quotidiana*. UTI sc. *consuerint*.

10. INCITATOS, *at full speed*, lit. *spurred on*.

11. SUSTINERE, to *rein in*. BREVI (*tempore*) - - - FLECTERE *quickly* to *control* and *turn them* i. e. their horses. PER TEMONEM PERCURRERE, *to run along the pole*, i. e. to run out upon the pole of the chariot between the horses and stand upon the yoke (*in jugo insistere*).

12. INDE, *thence*, i. e. from the yoke.

13. CONSUERINT; as construed before the different infinitives that precede. Note the force of Perfect (*have been and still*) *are accustomed*. H. 486; III. 6, 1).

XXXIV.

THE ROMANS RETURN TO THEIR CAMP.

14. QUIBUS REBUS, *under these circumstances* or in *this state of affairs*. H. 426; (3) S. 322. PERTURBATIS NOSTRIS, H. 431; S. 332. NOVITATE PUGNAE by *the strange mode* (newness) *of fighting*.

16. NAMQUE. Zumpt (345) says that *namque*—does not differ essentially from *nam*—the *que* being redundant—though it denotes a closer connexion with the sentence preceding. CONSTITERUNT *stood still*, i. e. stopped driving to and fro with their chariots. SE RECIPERUNT *recovered*.

17. QUO FACTO, *upon this*, lit. *which being done*, i. e. the enemy having ceased their attack.

18. ALIENUM - - - ARBITRATUS, *thinking the time unfavourable. Alienus* means belonging to another—hence *unfavourable*; used with Dat. H. 391-1, with Gent. H. 399-3; with Abl. with and without preposition, H. 391-2-3; with Acc. with preposition, H. 391, 2, 1).

19. SUO LOCO, in a *favourable position*. Note the force of *suus* one's own; hence *favourable* just as *alienus being another's* is *unfavourable*. H. 422. 1. S. 326. INTERMISSO, *having intervened.*

20. REDUXIT. This term is a euphemism by which Caesar avoids stating what was, no doubt, an unpleasant fact, that *he beat a hasty retreat.* On this occasion, at least, Caesar evidently thought discretion the better part of valour.

21. QUI – – – DISCESSERUNT, *the rest* (of the Britons) *who were in the fields departed*, i.e., left their homes to join the army of their countrymen—in obedience to the summons referred to in chap. 32.

22. SEQUUTAE, &c.; Order. TEMPESTATES (*ejusmodi* or *tales*) SEQUUTAE SUNT – – – QUAE CONTINERENT *tempests of such kind* (*or such tempests*) *followed* (i.e., set in), *that they confined.* H. 500: 500. 2: 50 1. I: S. 479. CONTINUOS—DIES—*many days in succession.* H. 378; S. 240

23. A PUGNA, *from fighting, i.e.* from attacking the Romans. Note, *pugna* denotes a close encounter; *proelium* a general engagement.

26. SUIS PRAEDICAVERUNT, *published to their countrymen.* QUANTA FACULTAS – – – DARETUR, *what a splendid opportunity – – was given*; depends upon *demonstraverunt.*

27. SUI LIBERANDI, of *liberating themselves.* For explanation of this apparent irregularity, see H. 563, 4; for further explanation see Zumpt, 660-663.

28. CASTRIS, H. 425, 2, 2); 434, 1, S. 306. EXPULISSENT. Why Pluperfect; H. 532, 4. HIS REBUS, *by these means.*

30. AD CASTRA, *to* or *near the camp, i. e.* of the Romans.

XXXV.

THE BRITONS AND ROMANS AGAIN FIGHT.

31. CAESAR is, strictly speaking, the subject of CONSTITUIT, the last word in the sentence; but it is easier to construe it as the subject of VIDEBAT, *although Caesar saw, i. e.* felt certain. IDEM FORE QUOD, *that the same thing would happen which.* H. 545, 544, S. 507, 518.

32. UT - - - EFFUGERENT: explanatory of *idem*, viz: *that if, etc.*

33 NACTUS - - - TRIGINTA, *having got about thirty horse.* The number is so small that some commentators think that the text ought to read three hundred instead of thirty; but all the manuscripts, as well as the Greek paraphrase give the latter number.

34. ANTE DICTUM EST. See Chapters XXI. and XXVII.

35. TRANSPORTAVERAT, i. e. *ex Gallia*. IN ACIE, *in order of battle.*
1. DIUTIUS—*long;* no comparison is involved; so often.
2. TERGA VERTERUNT, *turned their backs*, i.e. fled.
3. QUOS (=*eos*) (NOSTRI) SUBSEQUUTI (*our men*) *having pursued these.* TANTO SPATIO, *over as* (lit. so), *much space*, i.e. as for. H. 378-2 QUANTUM, *as:* Neuter Acc. agreeing with *spatium*, understood, and Dir. Obj. of *officere*. CURSU ET VIRIBUS, by *running and strength*, i.e. as far as their strength enabled them to run, H. 414, S. 311.
COMPLURES EX IIS, *many of them*, i. e., of the Britons; depends upon *occiderunt.*
5. LONGE LATEQUE, *far* and *wide*.

XXXVI.

THE BRITONS SUE FOR PEACE—CAESAR DEMANDS MORE HOSTAGES.

7. DIE. H. 426; S. 322.
8. HIS NUMERUM DUPLICAVIT. H. 384, 11; S. 287.
9. QUEM, refers to *numerum*. EOS, refers to *obsidum*.
10. PROPINQUA - - - EQUINOCTII, *as the equinox was at hand*, lit. the *day* (i. e, time) *of the equinox being near.* H. 431; S. 332. In Chap. XX., it is said *exigua parte aestatis reliqua;* hence the autumnal equinox is meant, i. e., 22nd of September. Caesar remained in Britain about three weeks.
11. HIEMI - - - SUBJICIENDAM, *that the voyage should not be exposed to the* (or *a*) *storm*, i. e., should not be made at the stormy season, as likely would be the case if he should wait for the hostages. The clause depends upon *existimabat.*
SUBJICIENDAM (ESSE), Passive Periphrastic Conjugation. H. 232; S. 102, II.
12. IDONEAM TEMPESTATEM, *weather favourable*, i. e., for setting sail.
13. MEDIAM NOCTEM, *the middle of the night*, i. e., midnight. H. 441, 6; S. 341.
13. OMNES QUAE, *all of which*, lit. *which all:* so—*nos omnes, all of us.* INCOLUMES—Predicate adject. after *pervenerunt arrived safe.* H. 353, 362, 2, ii., 438, 2; S. 212.
14. EX HIS sc. *navibus, of these* (ships). H. 398, 4, 2; S. 272; Obs.
15. EOSDEM - - - POTUERUNT, *were not able to make* (i.e., to reach) *the same ports which* (i. e., as) *the rest made* (*ceperunt*). The reference seems to the ports mentioned in page 8, lines 8 and 11.
16. PAULO INFRA, *a little lower down*, i. e., a lower down along the Gallic coast. DELATAE SUNT, from *defero*. H. 292; S. 114.

XXXVII.

THE MORINI ATTACK THREE HUNDRED ROMANS.

17. QUIBUS EX REBUS, *from these vessels*, i. e., from the two transports referred to in the last chapter. QUUM - - - TRECENTI, *when our soldiers, about three hundred in number had been disembarked.*

19. MORINI - - - ADDUCTI - - - CIRCUMSTETERUNT - - - AC - - - JUSSERUNT, principal clause. QUOS - - - PACATOS - - - RELIQUERAT —*whom - - had left pacified*, i. e., in a state of peace.

20. NON ITA MAGNO NUMERO, *with not a very large number.* With regard to *non ita*, Zumpt remarks (730), *non ita* is used like the English *not so*, which is to be explained by an ellipsis. *non ita longe aberat, he was not far off*, viz., as you may imagine; but it also acquires the meaning of *not exactly, not very*, i.e., it becomes equivalent to *non sane, non ad modum*."

22. SI NOLLENT, *if they did not wish.* H. 293, 523, 2; S. 113, 471.

22. *Arma ponere, to lay down their arms.* Supply *eos* as subject of *ponere.*

22. ORBE FACTO, *having formed a circle.* In this way the Roman soldiers, though surrounded, were enabled to present a front to the enemy on every side. It was a movement, however, only resorted to in extreme danger, and as a means of defence.

23. AD CLAMOREM, *in response to a shout*, lit. *to a shout;* no doubt a preconcerted signal agreed upon by the Britons.

25. SUIS AUXILIO, *to the assistance of his men*, lit. *for assistance to his men.* H. 390, II., 1, 2; S. 297.

27. AMPLIUS QUATUOR HORIS, *more than four hours.* H. 417, 3; S. 319.

28. ACCEPTIS, i.e.; *a nostris.* EX IIS, *of them*, i.e., of the Morini. POSTEA—QUAM = *posteaquam.* H. 704, IV., 3; 528, 2, 2.

30. ABJECTIS ARMIS, *having thrown away their arms.*

XXXVIII.

THE MENAPII INVADED—A THANKSGIVING DECREED TO CAESAR.

32. TITUM LABIENUM LEGATUM, *Titus Labienus, his lieutenant;* depends upon *misit.* Titus Labienus was one of Caesar's ablest officers in the Gallic war. He, however, at the commencement of the civil war deserted Caesar and joined Pompey. He was killed at the battle of Munda.

34. QUI QUUM, *since they*, i. e., the Morini.

35. PROPTER SICCITATES PALUDUM, *on account of the dryness of the marshes.* Note *siccitates.* The rule is, that abstract nouns want the

plural (H. 130, 2 ; S. 49). The plural of the abstract *siccitates* must be explained by the plural *paludum*. Caesar generally uses the plural when the same thing happens in (or is true in respect to) several places. The marshes which had formerly served as a barrier and a protection against the Romans were now—dry— it being near the end of summer ; hence the natives were deprived of their usual place of retreat, QUO SE . . . NON HABERENT *had no place to which* (lit, *had not whither*) *they could betake themselves*. QUO SE RECIPERENT is the Dir. Obj. of *haberent*.

1. QUO PERFUGIO, *which refuge*, i, e., *which as refuge*. H. 419, I. ; S. 315. FUERANT USI, *they had used*.

2. IN POTESTATEM . . . VENERUNT, *came* (i. e., fell), *into the power of Labienus*. QUINTUS TITURIUS et LUCIUS COTTA. See note, page 3, line 3.

6. ABDIDERANT IN, *had* (*gone into and*) *hidden themselves in*. Note force, of *in*.

7. SE RECEPERUNT, has for its subject *Quintus Titurius* et *Lucius Cotta*, in lines 2 and 3. HIBERNA sc. *castra*, *winter quarters*.

8. EO, *thither* i. e., to his winter quarters. OMNINO, *in all*, i. e., only.

9. RELIQUAE NEGLEXERUNT, *the rest omitted* i. e. to send hostages as they had agreed. H. 441,6 ; S. 341. This circumstance has been assigned as pretext on the part of Caesar for making a second descent upon Britain. HIS REBUS GESTIS, *on account of these exploits*—or *successes*. *Res gesta*, lit. a thing done, hence an *act* ; *res gestae*, acts, exploits, etc.

10 EX. This preposition, the origin of which German philologists are not agreed upon, has different relations of time, place, cause, etc. Primarily it means *out of*, *from*,especially when denoting *cause* ; hence it has also the signification of *in consequence of*, or *in accordance with*, and that in a great many expressions, such as *ex lege*, *ex testamento*, *ex literis*, etc. See Zumpt, 309.

10. EX LITERIS CAESARIS *in consequence of* (i. e. upon the receipt of) *dispatches from* (lit. *of*) *Caesar*. *Caesaris* is Subjective Genitive. H. 396, I. :

DIERUM - - - SUPPLICATIO, *a thanksgiving of twenty days*. The *supplicatio* was a great religious ceremony—an act of thanksgiving—to the gods decreed by the Senate upon an occasion of some signal victory. The temples were thrown open, and the statues of the gods were taken from their pedestals, and placed upon couches beautifully adorned, and surrounding altars which were loaded with the richest dishes. This part of the solemnity was called LECTISTERNIUM, and was attended by the people to give expression to their joy and thankfulness to the gods. The value of the victory was supposed to determine the length of this sacred festival, though sometimes decreed for one day, its usual period was three or five days. Caesar, as we see in the text, obtained one of twenty days. He had previously obtained one of fifteen days—it being he tells us (L. II., c. xxxv.), the first oc-

casion such an honor had been conferred upon a Roman General. If Caesar, however, told no more in his dispatches about his exploits in Britain, than we find in the preceding chapters, there were certainly no very great reasons for rejoicing. From some cause or other, the Romans evidently anticipated much more from Caesar's invasion of Britain than they ever realized.

BOOK FIFTH.

CAMPAIGN OF THE *year* B. C. 54, *in the* CONSULSHIP OF L. DOMITIUS AHENOBARBUS AND APPIUS CLAUDIUS PULCHER.

I.

CAESAR PREPARES HIS FLEET.

1. LUCIUS - - - CONSULIBUS, *Lucius Domitius and Appius Claudius being consuls*, i. e. in the consulship of, &c., A. U. C. 700, B. C. 54. Abl. Abs. H. 431, 2; S. 332, 334.

2. CAESAR DISCEDENS—*Caesar departing*, i. e., when departing. AB HIBERNIS, i. e., among the Belgae. See page 10, line 7. IN GALLIAM, i. e., into Cisalpine Gaul—which was Caesar's province. UT - - - CONSUERAT, *as he had been accustomed yearly*, i. e. to go into Italy; an adverbial clause modifying *discedens*.

3. IMPERAT has *legatis* for Indir. Obj., and the clause *uti - - - curarent* for Dir. Obj., H. 384, II.; S. 287. QUOS—PRAEFECERAT, *whom he had appointed over the legions*. H. 386, 1; S. 292. UTI AEDIFICANDAS CURARENT, that they (i. e. the lieutenants) *should cause to be built*.

4. QUAM PLURIMAS POSSENT, *as many as they were able*, i. e., as many as possible. This is a common Latin formula—the origin of which is not known. Schneider explains *quam plurimas possent* thus; *tam plurimas quam illi possent plurimas facere*. H. 170, 2; S. 353. See also Zumpt, 108, 689.

5. MODUM, *the fashion* (generally). FORMAM—*the form* (particularly).

6. SUBDUCTIONESQUE, *and for* (ad.) *drawing them on shore*. This refers to the custom of the ancients drawing their vessels on shore when not in use. As *subducere naves* is *to draw vessels on shore*; so *deducere naves* is *draw vessels from the shore into the water*, i. e., to launch them.

7. PAULO FACIT (EAS) HUMILIORES, he *makes* (*them*) *a little lower*,—*humiliores* is complementary of *facit*. He makes lower i. e. lowers—what?—the ships. *Esse* is often unnecessarily supplied in Latin as *to be* is in English. QUAM QUIBUS for *quam ae sunt quibus*. QUIBUS, Abl. H. 419, I.; S. 315. IN NOSTRO MARI, i. e., the Mediterranean.

8. CONSUEVIMUS, *have been* (and hence still are) *accustomed*. H. 471, II. 3. ID, he *does this*; supply *facit*. H. 367, 3, 1). EO MAGIS QUOD, *on this account the more that* (*because*). QUOD - - - COGNOVERAT explains *eo*, i. e., *on this account, viz. that* - - -; the special reason of *facit id*.

9. IBI, *there*, i. e., in the English channel where the vessels were to be used. *Fluctus* depends upon *cognoverant*, and is subject of *fieri* (*occurred*).

10. *Ad* governs *transportandum* upon which *onera* and *multitudinem* depend. H. 565, 1 and 2; S. 533. JUMENTORUM. Horses here seem to be specially meant—though the phrase *equi et alia jumenta* in Livy shows that other animals as well as horses were used as beasts of burden.

11. PAULO LATIORES; supply *facit eas*.

12. ACTUARIAS FIERI, *to be made light, easy propelled*. *Acturias* is here a Pred. Adj. It might, however, be considered a noun—*naves* being understood—and rendered *swift-going vessels*. *Naves actuariae*, or simply *actuariae*, were open vessels, remarkable for their lightness and speed, and worked by sweeps and sails, in contradistinction to the merchantmen or sailing vessels (*onerariae*). They were not properly ships-of-war, but were used where expedition was required. They were never fitted with less than eighteen oars, and were called *acturariae*, from the ease with which they could be impelled (*quia facile agi potuerunt*).

13. QUAM AD REM, *to which object*, i. e., to their being made *actuariae*. *Ea* depends upon *jubet*.

14. USUI, *of* (lit. *for*) *use*, i. e., are necessary. H. 390, II. 2; S. 297, obs. ARMANDAS, *equipping*. Among other things requisite for fitting out ships, Spain furnished large quantities of *spartum*, or Spanish broom, much used in the manufacture of ropes.

15. CONVENTIBUS - - - PERACTIS, the *assizes* - - - *being over*. The Roman governors of provinces usually employed their time in winter in the discharge of their civil duties—holding courts, correcting abuses, levying taxes, &c.—the summer being devoted to military operations. ILLYRICUM—this country also belonged to Caesar's province.

16. A PIRUSTIS, Abl. of Agent. H. 414, 5; S. 311, obs

17. INCURSIONIBUS. H. 414; S. 311.

EO, *thither*, i. e., into Illyricum.

18. CONVENIRE, supply *eos*, i. e., *milites*, as subject.

20. QUI (=II) DOCEANT (*eum*), *to inform him*. H. 500; S. 478. NIHIL - - - CONSILIO is an Acc. clause. H. 374, 4; S. 478. FACTUM sc. *esse*.

21. DEMONSTRANT (*ei*), *point out* (to him), i. e., the Pirustae through their envoys—*demonstrant* being co-ordinate with *mittunt*. OMNIBUS RATIONIBUS, *by all reasonable means*, i. e., to make any reasonable compensation for the injury.

22. De injuriis satisfacere, *to render satisfaction for the wrongs done*, lit. *concerning* the *wrongs*. Oratione, *excuse, defence.*
24. Eos, i. e., *obsides.* Ad, *up to.*
25. Nisi ita fecerint, *unless they should do so*, i. e., did so. Subj. of Condition. H. 503, III. Why Perfect? because in the Direct Discourse it would be Future Perfect. H. 532, 4.
Inter civitates, i. e., between the Pirustae and those whom they had injured. Dat, *appoints.* Qui - - - constituant, *to assess* (estimate) *the damage, and fix* (determine) *the penalty.*

II.

RETURNS INTO GAUL; MARCHES AGAINST THE TREVIRI.

5. Inde, *thence*, i. e., from Hither Gaul. Ad exercitum, i. e., the army's winter quarters.
6. Circuitis - - - hibernis, *having surveyed all the winter quarters*, lit. *the winter quarters having been gone around* (by him).
7. Singulari - - - studio, an adverbial phrase, modifying *instructas* (esse).
8. Circiter sexcentas naves, *about six hundred vessels;* depends upon *invenit*, and is the subject of *instructas* (esse) *had been got ready.* The number is thought by some to be incredible; but it must be borne in mind, that not only many new vessels had been built, but many old ones had been repaired. No doubt reference is to craft of all kinds. Cujus=*cujus generis naves.*
10. Multum - - - possent, *that there was not much wanting from their being able to be launched in a few days*, lit., *there was*, &c., *from this*, i. e., point (*ab eo*), viz., *that they would be able*, &c. H. 498; S. 461; A. L. P. C. 91, 92.
11. Collaudatis—qui, *having praised the soldiers and those who.* Abl. Abs.
12. Negotio, *over the work.* H. 386; S. 292. Quid fieri velit. This clause depends upon *ostendit*, but *quid* depends upon *velit*, and is subject of *fieri.*
13. Omnes sc. *naves.* Itium: by some supposed to be the modern *Wissant*, and by others (and among these Napoleon III.) *Boulogne.*
14. Commodissimum - - - transmissum esse, *that the passage across - - - was the most convenient*, i. e. the shortest.
15. Millium passuum—*thousand* (lit. *of*) *paces;* both are nouns. H. 178, 395; S. 69, Obs. 1, 268.
16. Huic rei, *for this purpose*, i. e., to carry out his orders for the assembling of the boats at Port *Itius.* H. 391; S. 298. Quod mili-

TUM (full form *id militum quod*); *what* (lit. *of*) *soldiers*; subject of *esse*. H. 396, III.; S. 270.

17. EXPEDITIS sc. *impedimentis*, *disencumbered* (of baggage), i.e. light-armed.

19. VENIEBANT, *were wont to come*.

20. SOLLICITARE, *to be tampering with*, i.e. urging them to rebel.

III.

SOME PARTICULARS ABOUT THE TREVIRI AND THEIR COUNTRY.

22. HAEC CIVITAS, i.e. of the *Treviri*. LONGE PLURIMUM VALET, *is by far the most powerful*. GALLIAE depends on *plurimum*. H. 306, 2, 4) (4), S. 272.

24. SUPRA, i.e. Lib. III. chap. II.

25. DUO; subject of *contendebant*. DE PRINCIPATU, *concerning the first place*, i.e. in power and influence. *Principatus* is a word of very general import, and its special application in any instance must be determined by the context. It does not, like *regnum*, necessarily involve either *official station* or *legal dignity*, but it generally includes *both*. INDUTIOMARUS ET CINGETORIX; in apposition to *duo*.

26. EX QUIBUS ALTER, *the latter of whom*. Note—*alter* means *one of two*: *alius*, *another*, *other*. SIMUL ATQUE=SIMUL AC.

27. ADVENTU COGNITUM EST, *it was known concerning the arrival*; render *as soon as the arrival*, &c., *was known*.

SE (i.e. *Cingetorigem*) - - - FUTUROS (*esse*) *that he and all his* (people) *would continue* (lit. *will be*) *in their allegiance*; depends upon *confirmavit*.

28. POPULI ROMANI, *towards* (lit. *of*) *the Roman People*. Obj. Genit. H. 395, II.

29. QUAEQUE=*et ea quae*; depends upon *ostendit*.

30. GERERENTUR, H. 525, S. 474. INDUTIOMARUS; construe with *instituit* (began) in line 35.

31. QUE in *iisque* connects *cogere* and *parare*—both infinitives depending upon *instituit*. IISQUE, &c., ABDITIS IN SILVAM, *those who*, &c., *having been sent into the woods and concealed there*, i.e. having sent, &c., Abl. Abs. Mark the force of *in silvam*. *In silva* would imply that the parties concealed were *already* in the woods, but *in silvam* means that they *were sent into* the woods and *concealed*.

31. PER AETATEM; H. 414, 5. 1); S. 134.

32. ESSE IN ARMIS, *to be in arms*, i.e. to bear arms.

33. QUAE sc. *silva*. INGENTI MAGNITUDINE, *of vast extent*. Abl. Abs. H. 438; S. 318. Caesar makes the forest about fifty miles in length. The modern name is Ardennes.

"And Ardennes waves above them her green leaves."—*Byron*.

AD INITIUM, *to the frontiers.*

1. CINGETORIGIS *for* (lit. *of*) *Cingetorix*, Obj. Genit.

3. PRIVATIM is generally construed with *petere ab eo*, sc. *to seek from* (i.e. to solicit) *him privately;* but from its position *privatim* seems to explain *suis;* hence DE SUIS PRIVATIM REBUS may be rendered *in regard to their own personal interests.*

4. QUONIAM, *since*, i.e. on account of discussions between Indutiomarus and Cingetorix. CIVITATI CONSULERE, to *consult for* (i.e. to take measures for) *for the interests of the state.* Note—the use of *consulo ? consulo tibi*, *I consult for your interest; consulo te*, I *consult thee; consulo in te*, I take *measures against thee.* H. 385-3, S. 291, Obs. 6, A. L. P. C. 232.

5. VERITUS, *fearing*, lit. *having feared.* H. 574, 1; S. 524.

6. SESE NOLUISSE AB SE DISCEDERE (saying), *that he was unwilling to depart* (i.e., to be absent) *from his countrymen.* Some, however, construe *se discedere, that he kept aloof* from his countrymen, i.e., that he did not join those who had attended the national diets called by Caesar. The former rendering seems preferable. H. 449, 1, 551; S. 501.

7. QUO FACILIUS CONTINERET, *that he might the more easily keep.* H. 497; S. 453.

8. DISCESSU, Abl. of Cause.

9. PROPTER - - - LABERETUR, *should, on account of their thoughtlessness, fall off*, i.e., revolt.

10. SE VENTURUM (*esse*), *that he* (Indutiomarus) *would come.* AD EUM, i. e., *Caesarem.*

11. SUAS FORTUNAS = *suas fortunas, et fortunas civitatis.* EJUS FIDEI, *to his* (Caesar's) *protection*—implying trust and confidence. The last sentence depends upon a verb of *saying* understood.

IV.

CAESAR AND INDUTIOMARUS AT VARIANCE.

13. CAESAR is really the subject of *jussit*, i.e., *Caesar - - - tamen - - jussit.* It is easier, however, to render, *although Caesar perceived*, i.e., knew.

14. QUAEQUE - - - DETERERET, *and what cause detained him from his projected purpose.*

16. OMNIBUS, &c., *since all things, &c.*

18. IN IIS FILIO, *among these being his son.*

19. QUOS EVOCAVERIT, sc. *Caesar.* NOMINATIM, *by name*, i.e., expressly. CONSOLATUS (*est*) INDUTIOMARUM, *he consoled Indutiomarus*, i.e., for the temporary deprivation of his son and friends whom he intended to carry with him as hostages into Britain,

20. UTI - - - PERMANERET. H. 492, 2; S. 451. NIHILO TAMEN SECIUS, *still none the less on that account*, lit., *by nothing, &c.*, i.e., Indutiomarus had complied with his demands, yet.

21. PRINCIPIBUS, *the chiefs*, i.e., of the party of Indutiomarus.

22. SINGILLATIM, *individually*, i. e., man by man. QUOD - - - INTELLIGEBAT, *which* (i. e. this) *he* (Caesar) *both thought was done by him* (Caesar) *in accordance with the deserts of that one*, i. e., Cingetorix.

23. TUM - - - ARBITRABATUR, *and especially imagined it to be of great importance.* H. 408, 3; S. 283. For the force of *quum — tum*, see Zumpt, 72–3.

24. EJUS (i. e., *Cingetorigis*) AUCTORITATEM - - - VALERE, *that the personal influence of that one* (i.e. Cingetorix), *should be as great as possible.*

25. CUJUS - - - PERSPEXISSET, *whose so very remarkable attachment towards himself* (i. e., Caesar) *he had clearly perceived.* H. 501, 1; S. 476: note that *ejus - - - perspexisset* depends upon *arbitrabatur.* H. 551, I; S. 507: and is the subject of *interesse.* H. 545; S. 507.

26. ID FACTUM, *this act* explained by *suam—minui, that his influence was lessened among his countrymen;* reference is to the reconciliation effected between Cingetorix and the chieftains.

1. QUI FUISSET, *and although he had been before of a hostile disposition.* H. 519; S. This explanation is not perhaps quite correct as *fuisset* generalizes the bitter, but suppressed hostility of Indutiomarus—expression of which is individualized by *exarsit, he blazed forth.*

28. HOC DOLORE=*hujus rei dolore, with resentment at this.*

V.

CAESAR PROCEEDS TO PORT ITIUS.

29. CONSTITUTIS, *having been* (or *being*) *settled.*

30. IBI COGNOSCIT, *he there learns.*

31. NAVES - - - REJECTAS - - - NON POTUISSE - - - *and that - - - ships - - - driven back - - - had not been able;* the clause depends upon *cognoscit.* IN MELDIS; the territory of the Meldae, here referred to, was situate on the Scaldis, or Scheldt, between what are now *Gand* and *Bruges.*

33. EODEM UNDE, *to the same place, from which;* both adverbs. The meaning is they did not reach *Port Itius.* NUMERO, Abl. of specification. H. 429; S. 311.

35. MILLIUM depends upon *equitatus.*

1. PRINCIPES sc. *conveniunt.*

2. EX QUIBUS (=*ex iis*) PERPAUCOS QUORUM - - LINQUERE DECREVERAT, *a very few of those whose - - - he had determined to leave.*

3. OBSIDUM LOCO, *in the place of* (i.e. *as*) *hostages.*

4. QUOD VEREBATUR, *because he feared;* i.e. had some fears. *Vereor* expresses the least degree of actual fear, and is used when doubt or fear about the happening of an event is expressed. Distinguish from *timeo, metuo* and *formidare.* A. L. P. C. 99. Note e; Caesar thought the Gauls might take advantage of his absence to reassert their independence.

VI.

DUMNORIX DOES NOT WISH TO GO TO BRITAIN.

5. UNA, *together, along.*

6. ANTEA, i.e. Lib. 1. chap III. IN PRIMIS, *in particular, especially.*

7. CONSTITUERAT sc. *Caesar.* CUPIDUM - - - NOVARUM, *fond of new things,* i.e. political changes or revolutions.

8. MAGNI ANIMI, *of haughty spirit,* or it may be of *great resolution.* Gent. of Char. H. 395-4; S. 274.

9. ACCEDEBAT HUC QUOD, *there was added to this, that.* The clause *quod—deferri* is the subject of *accedebat.* JAM, *already, before this.*

11. SIBI DEFERRI, *was bestowed upon him* (Dumnorix) i.e. vested in him. H. 384-1; S. 287.

12. RECUSANDI CAUSA, for the purpose *of protesting* (i.e. against the appointment), *or entreating* (i.e. to have it revoked). H. 563-5; S. 532. Note—the force of *de-precari, to pray away* (an evil), *from* (one).

13. ID FACTUM, *this fact,* i.e. that just stated. EX SUIS HOSPITIBUS, *from his friends;* more literally, *from those connected with him by ties of hospitality;* i.e. from those in whom he could put the fullest confidence. ILLE sc. DUMNORIX. PRECIBUS. H. 414; S. 311. ILLE sc. DUMNORIX. PRECIBUS. H. 414; S. 311.

15. PETERE CONTENDIT, *strove to obtain.*

16. NAVIGANDI. H. 563, 1, 2; S. 532, 276.

17. RELIGIONIBUS, *by religious scruples.* What these religious scruples were we are not informed, and have no means of knowing; possibly a mere ruse on the part of Dumnorix. SESE – – – IMPEDIRI =*impediretur ut dicebat, was hindered, as he said.* H. 529, II.; S. 469, 487. OBSTINATE, *firmly,* or *peremptorily.*

19. SEVOCARE (*eos*) SINGULOS, *to call* (them, i.e., the chiefs) *aside one by one.* SE—in *sevocare* is not a pronoun, but the inseparable preposition *se, aside, apart.* H. 307, 654, 2; S. 138; Obs. 2, 744.

21. FIERI depends upon a verb of saying implied in *territare.* H. 530, 1; S. 466; the subject of *fieri* is the clause *ut - - - spoliaretur, that Gaul was stripped of all her nobility.* NOBILITATE. H. 425, 2; S. 306.

22. ID ESSE CONSILIUM CAESARIS (saying) *this was Caesar's design*, i.e., viz.: CONSILIUM is explained by *ut—necaret*. H. 495, 3. VOS. Dir. Obj. of *interficere*.

23. HOC OMNES, i.e., the hostages.

24. FIDEM - - - INTERPONERE is usually translated *he pledged his word to the rest*, but may it not be better rendered *he interposed a mutual pledge to the rest* (as an obstacle to their going), i.e., proposed that he and the rest should mutually pledge themselves not to go?

JUSJURANDUM POSCERE (and) *he demanded an oath*, i.e., from them in ratification of that pledge. INTERPONERE is the Hist. Inf. H. 445, 1; S. 517.

25. UT - - - ADMINISTRARENT, *that they would do with common purpose*, lit. *by common deliberation*. QUOD—*id quod*. ESSE EX USU GALLIAE, *was of service to* (lit. *of*) *Gaul*. INTELLIXISSENT, *they should perceive*. Why Pluper. Subj.? because in the Direct Discourse it would be the Fut. Perf. H. 532, 4.

VII.

DUMNORIX ATTEMPTS TO QUIT THE CAMP—HE IS SLAIN.

28. TANTUM DIGNITATIS, *so much* (lit. *of*) *honour*. H. 396, III., 3; S. 270.

29. COERCENDUM (ESSE) sc. *Dumnorigem*, *that Dumnorix should be restrained*, depends upon *statuebat*, *determined*.

30. QUIBUSCUNQUE - - - POSSET, *by whatever means he was able*.

31 QUOD - - - VIDEBAT, *because* (since) *he* (Caesar) *saw his mad folly was going too far*.

32. PROSPICIENDUM (*esse sibi*), *that he ought to take care*, lit. *that it ought to be looked on by him* (Caesar). H. 232, 554, 8; S. 53, II. NE (ille, i.e., Dumnorix) POSSET NOSCERE QUID SIBI (Caesari) AC REIPUBLICAE, *lest the other* (i.e. Dumnorix) *might be able to do some injury to* (lit. *to injure in some respect*) *him* (Caesar) *and the Republic*. This clause depends upon *statuebat* implied from the preceding clause, and is the subject of *prospiciendum esse*.

QUID; Acc. of Specif. H. 380, 2; S. 251. SIBI. H. 385; S. 288.

33. DIES. H. 378; S. 249.

34. CORUS VENTUS, *the north-west wind*.

1. DABAT OPERAM, *took pains*.

2. NIHILO TAMEN SECIUS, *still none the less*; see page 13, line 20. COGNOSCERET, *to learn*; supply *ut*.

4. CONSCENDERE, *to embark*, lit. to *climb together*. The Roman army was composed mainly of infantry; hence in the text *milites* is used to denote by way of eminence the larger and more important

division of the army. IMPEDITIS, *occupied*, i.e., in the preparations of the voyage.

6. INSCIENTE CAESARE, *without Caesar's knowledge.* H. 431; S. 332. DOMUM. H. 379; S. 260. QUA RE, *this matter*, i.e., the departure of Dumnorix.

9. INTERMISSA, *being put off.* RETRAHI (*him*), *to be brought back*; supply *eum*. SI VIM FACIAT, *if he offers violence*, i. e., resists by arms. HUNC, i. e., *Dumnorigem*, depends upon *arbitratus*; and is the subject of *facturum esse*. SE. (i. e., Caesare), ABSENTE, *in his* (Caesar's) *absence*.

11. PRO SANO, *as a sane man*, i. e., as a prudent man might be expected to act. QUI NEGLEXISSET, *since he had slighted.* H. 517, 1, 519; S. 476.

12. ENIM, *as a matter of course*, i. e., *as might be expected*; not inferential.

13. MANU, *with his hand*, i. e., in active and determined manner.

14. CIVITATIS. H. 401. ILLI, i. e., *the cavalry*. UT (*iis*) IMPERATUM EST, *as they had been commanded*, lit. *as it had been commanded to them.*

VIII.

CAESAR SETS SAIL, AND ARRIVES OFF THE COAST OF BRITAIN.

18. LABIENO RELICTO CUM. *Labienus having been left with.* H. 431; S. 332. CONTINENTI, what nouns and adjectives have the Abl. Sing. in i? H. 62, 63, 156. II. S. 24, 31, 32. MILLIBUS, H. 78; S. 69. UT TUERETUR, *to protect*, lit. *that he might protect.* H. 489; 1. S. 449.

20. QUAEQUE=*et ea quae.* QUAE GERERENTUR, *which were being done.* H. 501; I. S. 474. CONSILIUMQUE, i. e., CAPERET, *and to* (lit. *that might*,) *take measures according to the time and according to the circumstance*, i. e., such measures as the exigencies of the occasion demanded.

22. IPSE, *he himself*, sc. Caesar.

PARI NUMERO—QUEM, *with the same number — — as* lit. *which.* The construction is *numero militum pari* (*eo numero*) *quem relinquebat.* The number of horse referred to is two thousand.

24. LENI AFRICO PROVECTUS (*thought*), *borne along* (at first) *by a gentle south-west wind. Africo* is really an adjective—*vento* being understood. The wind was called *Africus* by the Romans, because it came to them from the direction of *Africa Propria*, i. e., the modern *Tunis.*

25. MEDIA, - - INTERMISSO (*yet*), *about midnight the wind having died away.* MEDIA NOCTE. H. 426, 441. 6; S. 322, 341.

26. LONGIUS—AESTU, *being been carried down a considerable distance by the tide*, lit. *a greater distance than ordinary.* The tide carried

Caesar to the north-east, so that he saw Britain on his left (*sub sinistra*).

27. TUM - - - SEQUUTUS, *then again following* (i. e., taking advantage of), *of the change of tide.* H. 574, 1; S. 524.

8. OPTIMUM ESSE EGRESSUM COGNOVERAT, *he had discovered there was the best landing-place, egressum* depends on *cognoverat*, and is the subject of *esse.* H. 551 I. 545; S. 507. AESTATE, H. 426; S. 322.

30. QUA IN RE, *in this effort*, i.e. to gain the island. FUIT - - - LAUDANDA, *the endurance of the soldiers was to be praised*, i.e. worthy of praise. H. 395; S. 262. VECTORIIS - - NAVIGIIS (though) *in transport, and heavily laden ships.* NON - - - - LABORE, *the labour of rowing not being interrupted* (i.e. slackened) *for a moment.* ADAEQUARUNT for *adaequaverunt, equalled:* the subj. is *qui* in line 31. LONGARUM NAVIUM: war vessels were lighter and hence more easily propelled.

33. *Accessum* EST (impers) - - NAVIBUS (Dat) *it was approached by all the ships*, i.e. all the ships approached, or drew near. NAVIBUS. H. 388-1; S. 293.

34. HOSTIS, *a* (single) *foe.* SED UT, *but as.*

1. QUUM - - - EO CONVENISSENT, *though—had assembled there.* Subj. of Concession. H. 515; S. 483. PERTERRITAE—DESCESSERANT, *they* (Eae) *terrified—had departed.*

2. QUAE (i.e. *naves*). CUM ANNOTINIS, sc. *navibus, with the ships of the last year*, i.e, employed during last year. QUASQUE (=*et cum iis quas*) QUISQUE FECERAT, *and* (*with those*) *which each had built.*

3. COMMODI; supply *causa, for his own advantage*, lit. *on account of*, 397-1; S. 264. Perhaps the only instance of this use of the Genit. of substantive in a prose writer. AMPLIUS OCTINGENTIS, *more than eight hundred*, i.e. all those just mentioned, Note—the use of *amplius*: though followed by the Abl. it has no influence upon the construction, except to modify the number. H. 417-3; Zumpt, 485, Note 2. ERANT VISAE, *had been seen.* Grammatically, *quae* is the subject; but the intended subject includes, not only the vessels represented by quae, but also all the others—*cum* in fact being equivalent to *et.*

4. IN SUPERIORA LOCA. Again note the force of *in* with Acc, i.e. they had gone *into the higher positions*, and *hidden themselves there. In* with Abl. would imply that they had been there all the time.

IX.

CAESAR LANDS AND MEETS THE ENEMY.

6. CAESAR: subject of *contendit* and *praefecit.* EXPOSITO EXERCITU, *having disembarked his army*, lit. *the army having been disembarked*, Abl. Abs. CASTRIS, Dat. after *idoneo.* H. 391-1; S. 298.

7. Quo Consedissent, *in what place the forces of the enemy had encamped.* H. 525; S. 434.
8. Cohortibus decem. Ten cohorts formed a legion, the complement of cavalry for each legion being three hundred. As Caesar says ten cohorts—and not a legion—it is possible that these ten cohorts were made up from different legions.
9. Qui - - - essent, *to be a guard to the ships,* lit. *that they might be to the ships for a protection.* H. 500; S. 478. Praesido navibus. H. 390-1; S. 297. Vigilia; see iv. c. xxii, line 10. Eo - - - navibus, *fearing the less for the ships on this account;* a somewhat unusual phrase—though also found in Cicero. Navibus, H. 385; S. 291. The construction of *veritus* in the text is analogous to that of *timeo* and *metuo.* H. 385-3; S. 291; obs. 6.
11. Quod—relinquebat explains *eo,* i.e., for this reason, viz., *that* (because) *he was leaving them fastened at anchor, on a smooth and open shore;* see iv. c. xxiii, line 27.
12. Praesidio. H. 386, 1; S. 292. Navibus. H. 392; S. 288.
13. Noctu. H. 426, 130; S. 322. This word is only used in the Abl. Sing., and may be considered an Adverb.
Millia. H. 378, 178; S. 249, 69. Passuum; see iv. c. xxii, line 1.
14. Illi, *the latter,* i.e., the enemy.
15. Equitatu. H. 414, 7; S. 311. Ad flumen progressi, *having advanced to the river;* probably the *Little Stour,* about twelve miles from Deal. Ex loco superiore, *from the higher ground. Some* connect this clause with *progressi,* i.e., *having advanced from,* &c., others with *ceperunt,* i.e., they began from their *higher position;* see *ex arido,* page 4, line 4.
17. Repulsi, *being repulsed.* In silvas; see line 4.
18. Nacti, *having secured; repulsi* and *nacti* both agree with *illi* (i.e., hostes) the implied subject of *abdiderunt,* i.e., *those being,* &c., *and having,* &c.
Egregie munitum, *admirably fortified,* referring to *locum.*
19. Jam ante, *already before,* i.e., in time past.
20. Crebris arboribus succisis; *by numerous trees felled* (for the purpose); not Abl. Abs., but Abl. of Means. H. 414; S, 311.
21. Erant praeclusi, *had been blocked up.*
Ipsi - - - propugnabant, *they themselves in small detachments* (lit. *few, scattered about*), *kept making sorties out of the woods.*
22. Intra munitiones, *within their* (i.e., the enemy's) *fortifications.*
23. Milites, subject of *ceperunt* and *expulerunt. Infantry,* in distinction from *equites.* Testudine facta, *having formed a testudo.* A testudo was formed by the soldiers raising their shields over their heads and shoulders, and fitting them closely under each other, so that the whole formed a compact covering like the shell of a tortoise (*testudo*) (whence the name), or the pent of a shed, over which darts and other missiles would slide off without injury to the men below. The pent was produced by the outer rank stooping, while those before them gradually stood more and more erect. Under this cover

the soldiers advanced to the walls of a fortified place for the purpose of undermining or scaling them. AGGERE FACTO, *having thrown up a mound.* The *agger* was a mound of any suitable materials, as earth, wood, stone, thrown up before a besieged city. It was sometimes of great size and height. Upon the top of it were placed towers, both moveable and stationary, furnished with all the available engines and implements of ancient warfare. Note that a mound is properly said to be thrown up (*jaci*) while a tower is said *agi* (or *excitari*).

25. ACCEPTIS, i.e., by the Romans. EOS, i.e. *hostes.*

26. LONGIUS, *too far*, i.e., any great distance. VETUIT, sc. *suos.*

28 MUNITIONI - - - RELINQUI, *time to be left for the fortifying of the camp;* Dir. Obj. of *volebat.* H. 551, 2; S. 507.

MUNITIONI. H. 321, 2, 384, I.; S. 181, 3; 387. VOLEBAT. H. 293; S. 113.

X.

CAESAR'S SHIPS DAMAGED BY A STORM.

29. POSTRIDIE EJUS DIEI, *on the day after that day*, i.e., the next day. H. 411, 2; S. 271. MANE, *early in the morning.* TRIPARTITO, *in three divisions.*

2. UT PERSEQUERENTUR, *to pursue*, lit. *that they might pursue.* Distinguish *persequi* from *prosequi*; the former is to *make a pursuit after*, i.e., as in text; the latter *is to follow in pursuit*, i e., as in line 26.

31. HIS PROGRESSIS. Abl. Abs. ALIQUANTUM (Acc). H. 378; S. 249. ITINERIS. H. 396, III. 2-3; S. 270. QUUM JAM EXTREMI - - PROSPECTU. There is considerable doubt as to what body *extremi* refers. The general rendering is *when already the rear* (of the enemy) *were in sight*, i.e. only the rear ranks of the fleeing enemy were seen; this may be correct, but we are not informed that the enemies had rallied from their defeat of the previous day, and had again approached the Roman camp. The presumption is the other way, i.e. that they had not. *Extremi* then would certainly seem to refer to the troops Caesar had sent out; and hence the text should be rendered *while now* (yet) *the rear* (of the Roman pursuing body) *were in sight;* i.e. had not had time to get out of sight.

32. EQUITES VENERUNT, *horsemen came.*

33. QUI NUNTIARENT, *to report.* H. 500; S. 478. SUPERIORI NOCTE, *on the previous night.* H. 426; S. 322.

34. AFFLICTAS (esse) *had been shattered*, lit. *dashed to or against something*, i.e. each other.

35. ATQUE—ESSE, *and had been driven* (out of the water and were) *upon the shore*, i.e. lay stranded. Some editions read *in litus*, but *in litore* is more graphic, implying, as it does, that the vessels had not only been driven on shore, but were still lying there.

1. SUBSISTERENT, *held*—the reason assigned by the horsemen; hence the subjunctive. H. 520, II. 554, IV.; S. 421-487.

2. ITAQUE,—ACCEPTUM, *and* (to say) *that thus*, (i.e. in consequence) *great damage* had *been received from* (i.e. as the result of) *this collision of the ships.*

XI.

CAESAR REPAIRS HIS FLEET.

4. LEGIONES, &c., depends upon *jubet*, and is subject of *revocare*, &c.

5. ITINERE. Abl. 425-2-1); S. 306. JUBET. H. 551, II. 1; S. 291, obs. 5.

6. EADEM FERE, *almost the same things;* depends upon *perspicit.*

7. CORAM PERSPICIT, *he sees with his own eyes*, i.e. before him, on the spot.

8. REFICI POSSE VIDERENTUR, *seemed to be able to be repaired.* MAGNO NEGOTIO, *with* (i.e. by means of) *great labour.* H. 414; S. 311.

9. VIDERENTUR; subjunctive of Result. H. 489; S. 450. ITAQUE, *and so.* FABROS DELIGIT, *he selects the artificers.* Each Roman legion had its complement of artificers, but DELIGIT would seem to imply that he also selected from the ranks any others whose skill could be made available for this emergency. Under the term *Fabri* were included the *fabri ignarii*, or carpenters, and the *fabri ferrerarii*, or smiths.

10. LABIENO. Ind. Obj. H. 384-11; S. 287. UT INSTITUAT NAVES QUAM PLURIMAS POSSET, to *build as many ships as possible*, lit. *as he could.*

11. QUAM - - POSSET: for explanation of this Latin formula, see chap. 1, line 4. IIS LEGIONIBUS, *with* (i.e. by means of) *those legions.* Note—absence of preposition. Why? H. 414-5-1; S. 311. SINT *are* H. 501-1; S. 474. The clause *ut instituat* depends upon *scribit.*

12. ETSI - - - ERAT, *although the undertaking was* (one). OPERAE AC LABORIS. Pred. Genit. H. 402, III; S. 266.

13. COMMODISSUM ESSE STATUIT, *he deemed that it was expedient.* OMNES—CONJUNGI depends upon *statuit*, and the subject of ESSE – *commodissum*, being a complementary Adj. after *esse*—agreeing with the clause. H. 550, 546; S. 507, 513.

14. SUBDUCI = *in aridum subduci*, to be drawn (on the shore). UNA MUNITIONE, *by one general fortification*, i.e. the vessels were to be surrounded and defended by one rampart and ditch. In this way the limited forces at Caesar's command could be better utilized and rendered more available in the emergency.

15. NE - - INTERMISSIS, *not even the night seasons* (i.e. night hours) *being broken off from* (lit. *to*) *the labour of the soldiers;* or *not even*, &c., *being allowed to* (any discontinuance of) *the labours of the soldiers.*

The idea is that the work was kept going night and day, and that, at certain intervals, relays of fresh and vigorous men were on hand to take the places of the weary and worn out, whose turn it was to retire and rest.

17. EGREGIE generally means *eminently* or *peculiarly*, but in the text, *with great attention*, *admirably*, and hence *strongly*.

10. QUAS ANTE sc. *reliquerat*. EODEM UNDE, *to the same place from which*; referring to the fortified positions he had taken from the enemy; see Chap. IX.

19. EO, *thither*, i.e. to the place just mentioned.

20. UNDIQUE, *from all sides*. IN CONVENERANT, *had come to and assembled in*. Note force of *in*.

21. SUMMA IMPERII, *the supreme command*, lit *the whole of the command*. BELLIQUE ADMINISTRANDI, sc. *summa*, *and the entire management of the war*, lit. *the whole of managing the war*. SUMMA (noun) - - - PERMISSA, Abl. Abs. H. 431; S. 332.

22. CONSILIO. H. 414; S. 311. CASSIVELAUNO. H. 384, I.; S. 287. This king ruled over the country lying towards the mouth of the Thames. His election as generalissimo of the British forces was an acknowledgment of his superior power and talents upon the part of the other chiefs.

22. A MARI - - - OCTOGINTA, *about eighty miles from the sea*. Caesar here estimates the distance by the length of his own march from the coast. H. 378; S. 249.

24. HUIC - - - INTERCESSERANT, *at a former* (earlier) *period continual wars had existed to* (between) *this one* (*Cassivelaunus*) *with* (and) *the other states*, i.e. he had engaged in continual wars with, &c. HUIC H. 386; S. 292.

25. CONTINENTIA, put for *continua*.

26. ADVENTU. H. 414; S. 311. HUNC - - - BELLO. H. 386; S. 292.

XII.

CAESAR DESCRIBES BRITAIN.

28. QUOS NATOS - - - DICUNT, *who they* (i.e. themselves) *say that it has been handed down by tradition that they were born in the island itself*, i.e. sprung from it. The grammatical order is; *dicunt quos natos esse in insula ipsa proditum esse*; QUOS is the subj. of *natos esse*. QUOS—IPSA is the subj. of *proditum* (esse): and the whole clause QUOS - - - PRODITUM is the Dir. Ob. of *dicunt*.

29. MEMORIA. Abl. of Means. H. 314; S. 311. Many other ancient nations imagined that their first ancestors were produced or born from the earth, just as did these Britons.

30. PARS, sc. *incolitur*. PRAEDAE - - - CAUSA, *for the purpose of plunder and waging war*.

QUIBUS - - PERVENERANT, *from which states they having sprung, had come.* *Ex* is generally considered as showing the relation between *orti* and *civitatibus.* Does it not rather show the relation between *pervenerant* and *civitatibus*—the Abl. dependent upon *orti* being understood; see Zumpt, 451 and note. H. 425; S. 209, 310. Eo, *thither*, i. e., to Britain.

33. BELLO ILLATO, *and the war having been waged, i.e.*, when the war was over.

35. FERE, *for the most part.* GALLICIS sc. *aedificiis, to those of the Gauls.* These were of a most primitive kind; huts thatched with straw, and shared by man and beast.

Page 18 –1. UTUNTUR - - FERREIS, *they use copper and thin bars of iron.* H. 419, 1; S. 315. *Aes* was a composition of copper and tin; brass, which is a composition of copper and zinc, was probably never used by the ancients. *Talea* properly denotes a small wooden pin, or a piece of wood shaped somewhat like a spike, used for connecting together the timbers of a building. Hence Caesar uses the adjective *ferreus* to show that the *taleae*—referred to by him—though they were like the wooden ones in shape, were pieces of iron, AD - - - EXAMINATIS, *weighed to a certain weight*, i. e., of a fixed or definite weight: referring to *taleis.*

2. PRO NUMMO, *instead of money*, i. e., as money. Tacitus in his life of Agricola, mentions silver and gold as the productions of Britain. IBI - - ALBUM, *lead* (lit. *white tin*), *is produced there.*

3. IN - - - REGIONIBUS. This is wrong, Caesar, no doubt, wrote from report; hence the mistake. The tin mines are in Cornwall, in the south-west of England.

5. MATERIA, *timber*, i. e., wood, trees.

8. FAS NON PUTANT, *they do not think it lawful*; the reason why is not given. Note that *leporem - - gustare* is the Dir. Obj.; and *fas* the Pred. (i. e., Complementary Acc. of *putant.*) H. 373, 2, 2; and 3, 371, 5; S. 245. HAEC, why neuter? H. 445, 3, 1.

8. ANIMI CAUSA, *for the sake of amusement*, lit. *of the mind*, i. e., to divert the mind. LOCA - - FRIGORIBUS, *the climate* (lit. *the places are*), *more temperate*, (i. e., milder), *than in Gaul, the cold being less severe.*

XIII.

THE DESCRIPTION CONTINUED.

10. INSULA - - TRIQUETRA(*est*), *the island is triangular in form*, i. e., by natural situation. Caesar must have based this statement upon the reports of others, as we learn from Tacitus that the island was not circumnavigated by the Romans till Agricola's time. The student by turning to his map will see that the island is somewhat triangular in shape.

11. CONTRA GALLIAM, *over against Gaul.* ALTER ANGULUS QUI, *one angle which.* Note: *alter—alter—the one* (of two)—*the other*; see H. 145; S. 390.

12. AD CANTIUM, *at* (or in) *Kent.* QUO *whither.* OMNES - - - APPELLUNTUR, *all the ships* from Gaul *are directed.* Note position of *ex Gallia.*

13. INFERIOR, sc. *angulus.* MERIDIEM—*the south*, lit. *the midday.*

14. CIRCITER - - - QUINGENTA, *about five hundred miles*, i. e., Roman miles. This measurement must include all the irregularities of the coast. The distance from the Land's End (*Bolerium Promontorium*) to the North Foreland (*Cantium Promontorium*), measured in a straight line does not exceed 344 British or 356 English miles. ALTERUM sc. *latus.*

15. VERGIT AD HISPANIAM, *stretches* (lies) *towards Spain.* Caesar is wrong here as Spain lies to the south and not to the west of Britain.

16. QUA EX PARTE, *on which side.* HIBERNIA, *Ireland.* The origin of this name is not certain, but it would seem to be derived from the inabitants of its southern coast who were called *juverni.* The Romans knew very little about the island. DIMIDIO MINOR, *less by one-half.* DIMIDIO, Abl. of Diff. H. 418; S. 321. Caesar writes again from hearsay. Great Britain is computed to contain 77,370 square miles, and Ireland 30,370; hence the magnitude of the former is more than two-and-a-half times that of the latter.

17. SED - - - BRITANNIAM, *but the passage across* (i. e. from Ireland into Britain) *is of the same distance* (lit. *of equal length*) *as is that from Gaul into Britain.* PARI SPATIO. Abl. of Characteristic, with *transmissus.* H. 428; S. 318. ATQUE. H. 587, 1, 2; 451. Some remove the semicolon before *sed*, and make *transmissus*, Genit. sing. The clause in this case will be rendered (*but with as long a passage*, i. e., into Britain), *as* &c., lit. *with an equal distance of passage*, &c., and *pari spatio* will be Abl. of Char, with HIBERNIA.

18. MEDIO. H. 441, 6; S. 341.

19. MONA. This is now known as the Isle of Man. Tacitus applies this name to Anglesey. Annal. xiv, 29. OBJECTAE (*esse*) *to be lying opposite*, i. e., on this coast. Pred. Nom. H. 547, 1; S. 513. Probably the Orkney and Shetland islands are meant; but the term *objectae* as applied to them is not correct.

21. DIES—NOCTEM, *that there is night for thirty successive days under* (i. e, at the *time* of) *the winter solstice.* BRUMA is a contraction from *brevima*, and *brevima* from *brevissima*; hence *bruma* = *brevissima* (*dies*) the shortest day, i. e., in the year, viz.: 22nd December. DIES. H. 378; S. 249. The clause depends upon *scripserunt.* H. 551, I.; S. 507.

22. DE EO, *concerning this*, i. e., the long nights.

23. NISI VIDEBAMUS, *except we perceived.* H. 508, 3; Zumpt. 526. CERTIS - - - MENSURIS, by accurate *measurements by means of water.* This measurement was effected by the *clepsydra*, or water clock. The clepsydra, as the name imports, was of Grecian origin, and was first

adopted at Rome in the third consulship of Pompey. It was constructed upon the same principle as the sand-glass - water being used instead of sand. In the most common kind of water-clocks, the water issued, drop by drop, through a hole in one vessel and fell into another, in which a light body that floated marked the height of the fluid as it rose, by pointing to a scale of hours on the side of the vessel, and thus indicated the time. All the *clepsydrae* had this defect in common, that water at first flowed out rapidly, and afterwards more slowly, so that they required much care and regulation.

25. Ut - - - fert, *as their opinion holds*, i. e., according to their opinion. Illorum, refers to *nonnulli scripserunt*. in line 21. Septingentorum millium. Pred. Genit. H. 401; S. 266. The true length is about 570 English miles = 590 Roman miles.

26. Tertium sc. latus. Contra septentriones, *opposite the north*. This is wrong; it should be north-east.

28. Huic sc. lateri. Dat. of Poss. H. 387; S. 296. Millia - - - octoginta, *800 miles*. Caesar here is greatly in error. The true measurement is about 550 English = 570 Roman miles.

29. Existimatur is not Impers.; the clause *huic* - - - *esse* is its subject.

30. Vicies. H. 181; S. 72. Passuum, depends upon *millium*, and *millium* upon *centum*, *hundreds of thousands of paces*, i. e., 2,000,-000 paces = 2,000 miles. H. 395; S. 263.

XIV.

CAESAR MENTIONS SOME CUSTOMS OF THE BRITONS.

31. Sunt (sc. *ii.*) humanissimi, *most civilized*.

33. A Gallica consuetudine, *from the customs of Gaul*. Interiores plerique, *most of these dwelling in the interior*.

34. Lacte. Abl. of Means. H. 471; S. 311.

35. Vestiti sunt, *are* (accustomed to be) *clothed*. Note force of Perf. The custom though an old one—still exists. H. 471, II. 3. Se vitro inficiunt, *stain themselves with woad*, i. e., of a blue colour. One species of this plant –*isatis tinctoria*—is still cultivated in Britain for the indigo derived from its leaves. The Romans, it is thought, confounded the word *glas*, which means not only green, but also blue, with the old German word *glas*, first applied to amber, and afterwards to glass, and hence gave the name of *vitrum* to the plant in question.

1. Hoc, *on this account*. H. 414; S. 311. Horridiore aspectu, of a *more savage* (or *terrible*) *appearance*. Abl. of Char. H. 428; S. 318.

2. Capillo sunt promisso, *they wear their hair long*, lit. *of hair distended* (or *hanging down*). H. 428; S. 318.

ATQUE OMNI - - - RASA, *and in addition have every part shaven.* Abl. of Char.

4. UXORES HABENT, order; *deni, duodenique* (Britanni) *habent uxores communes inter se,* they (i.e. the *Britons*) *in parties of ten and twelve,* &c.

6. HABENTUR, *are considered.*

7. LIBERI. Pred. Nom. H. 362, 363, 2, 3; S. 232 (4). QUO—AD QUOS, *to whom,* lit. *whither.* QUAEQUE, *each.*

XV.

THE ROMANS AND BRITONS FIGHT.

8. ACRITER CONTENDERUNT, *contended vigorously.*

9. ITINERE, *on the march.* H. 435; S. 137. TAMEN UT; supply *ita* before *tamen, in such a way, however, that,* i.e. with so little success on the enemy's part.

11. COLLES, what gender? H. 106; S. 145, 8. COMPLURIBUS INTERFECTIS, *many,* (i.e. of the enemy) *having been killed,* i.e., after killing, &c.

12. INSEQUUTI sc. ROMANI. EX SUIS. H. 398, 4; S. 272. Obs. ILLI refers to the Britons.

13. INTERMISSO SPATIO, *an interval* (of time) *having elapsed,* i.e. after some time. IMPRUDENTIBUS NOSTRIS, *our men being unwary,* i.e. off their guard—not expecting the enemy.

14. SE EJICERUNT, *rushed,* lit. *hurled themselves;* subj. *illi* in line 12.

16. SUBMISSIS, *having been sent to their aid.* Caesar's most usual form is *subsidio missis.*

17. ATQUE - - - DUARUM, *and these, too, the first* (cohorts) *of two legions.* The first cohort of a legion not only contained picked men, but was also stronger numerically than any of the other nine.

INTELLECTUM EST, *it was perceived:* the real subject of *intellectum est* is the clause *nostros,* &c. NOSTROS is the subject of *esse* in line 28.

26. QUOD POSSENT, *because they were able.* Subjunctive of Cause. H. 517; S. 487. Obs. 1.

27. CEDENTES sc. *hostes,* Acc. (the enemies) *giving ground.* AB. - - - DISCEDERE to *quit* (lit. *to go way from*), *their standards,* i. e., to leave their ranks. The discipline of the Roman army was very strict and was maintained with the greatest severity. For misconduct, officers were exposed to degradation: and private soldiers to corporeal punishment. Whole legions sometimes for some particular transgression of military duty were condemned to decimation, which consisted in the names of the offenders being drawn by lot, and every *tenth* man being put to the sword.

28. EQUITES, depends upon *intellectum est,* and is the subject of *dimicare.*

30. ILLI, *these*, i. e., the enemy. ETIAM CONSULTO, *even designedly*, i. e., for strategetic reasons. PAULUM - - - REMOVISSENT, *had withdrawn - - - somewhat.*

31. ET PEDIBUS - - - CONTENDERENT, *and fought on foot in unequal combat*, i. e., in a manner of fighting disadvantageous to the Romans. PEDIBUS. H. 414; S. 311. EQUESTRIS - - - INFEREBAT, *moreover this plan of cavalry fighting* (on the part of the Britons) *was wont to bring equal and* (indeed) *the same danger* (to their opponents), *both* (when the latter were (in the act of) *retreating and pursuing.* Anthon makes the participles *cedentibus* and *insequentibus* refer to the British horse, and renders them as if Abl. Abs.; but our rendering—making them in Dat. agreeing with *iis* (i.e., the foes of the Britons), is certainly preferable. The statement is rather general than special.

33. CEDENTIBUS. Note the use of participle, i. e., not *to those who retreat*, but *to those in the act of retreating*, i. e., when they are, &c.

34. ACCEDEBAT HUC, *in addition to this was the fact*, lit. *to this there added* (itself). The clause *ut*, &c., is the real subject of *accedebat.*

35. CONFERTI (from *confercio*) *in close array:* lit. *crowded together.* RARI, *in small detachments*, lit. *few, scattered about:* these two adjectives agree with the subject of *proeliantur*, i.e. *illi* (understood). The reference is to the cavalry of the Britons. MAGNIS INTERVALLIS, *at great distances.* STATIONESQUE - - HABERENT, and (that) *therefore they had reserves placed at different points.* ATQUE - - - SUCCEDERENT, *and* (that) *in addition they relieved each other in turn and* (that) *therefore the vigorous and fresh kept succeeding to* (i.e. *taking the places of*) *the wearied.* The student will notice how we have rendered *que* and *atque.* The difference between *et* and *que* is that the former is a copulative particle, and the latter an adjunctive one, i. e., *et* connects things which are considered as different, and *que* adds what belongs to or naturally flows from things. Zumpt (333) says, that in connecting propositions with one another, *que* denotes a consequence or result and is equivalent to *and therefore.* Zumpt (333) also remarks that *atque* is formed from *ad* and *que*, and therefore properly signifies *and in addition, and also.*

3. DEFATIGATIS. Dat. H. 386; S. 292.

XVII.

THE ROMANS AND BRITONS AGAIN ENGAGE.

4. DIE. H. 426; S. 322. CASTRIS sc. *Romanis.* COLLIBUS. H. 421, 435; S. 137, 326.

5. CONSTITUERUNT, *halted.* RARI agrees with the subject of *coeperunt.* LENIUS, *with less spirit*, lit. *more remissly;* comparative of *leniter.*

7. PABULANDI, of *foraging*. Gerund. H. 563; S. 531.

8. TREBONIO. Trebonius was *tribunus plebis* B.C. 55, and carried a *rogatio*, which gave Caesar the government of Gallia for five years from the beginning of B.C. 53 to the end of B.C. 49. He was now a *legatus* under Caesar, who thus, no doubt, rewarded the important service that Trebonius had rendered him when tribune. He was afterwards one of Caesar's assassins.

9. AD PABULATORES, *upon the foragers*, i.e., those on foot.

10. ADVOLAVERUNT sc. *hostes*, *rushed upon*. SIC - - - ABSISTERENT, *so* (i.e., with so much spirit) *that they did not stand away from* (i.e., came up close to) the *standards and legions*.

11. ACRITER, *vigorously*. IN EOS, i.e., *hostes*.

12. QUOAD, *until*. SUBSIDIO CONFISI, *relying upon support*, i.e., confident of being supported. *Subsidium* is a military term, and means a *support*, i.e., a body of soldiers rendering aid to those hard pressed by the enemy. SUBSIDIO, Dat. or Abl. which? H. 385. 1. 419; S. 291. 7.

13. VIDERENT. H. 517, 1; S. 483. PRAECIPITES, *headlong*, i.e., in headlong flight: an adjective grammatically limiting *hostes*, but practically modifying *egerunt*. H. 443; S. 343. EORUM, i.e., *hostium*. SUI COLLIGENDI. Note this apparent irregularity of a pronoun in the plural and a gerundive in the singular agreeing. For explanation, see H. 563, 4, and for fuller details, Zumpt, 660. CONSISTENDI and DESILIENDI are gerunds.

16. DEDERUNT sc. *nostri*. EX HAC FUGA, *during this flight*, i.e., the auxiliaries made their way to their respective homes.

17. SUMMIS COPIIS, *with all their forces*, i.e., with all their forces united. Some render *summis*, *with very numerous*.

18. NOBISCUM. H. 434. 5.

XVIII.

CAESAR ENTERS THE TERRITORIES OF CASSIVELAUNUS.

20. COGNITO - - - EORUM (i.e., *hostium*) *learning their* (i.e., the enemy's) *design*. Abl. Abs.

21. FINES. H. 132. QUOD FLUMEN, *which river*. Note the repetition of the noun: a common practice with Caesar.

22. OMNINO, *in all*, i.e., only. LOCO. H. 422; S. 326. PEDIBUS, *on foot*, i.e., by the infantry. H. 414; S. 311. HOC (sc. *loco*) AEGRE, *and in this* (place) *with difficulty*. TRANSIRI, *to be forded*.

23. VENISSET sc. *Caesar*. AD ALTERAM RIPAM, *on* (or near) *the other* (i.e., opposite) *bank*. For the meaning of *ad*, in a local sense, see Zumpt, 296.

24. MAGNAS—INSTRUCTAS is an objective clause, depending upon ANIMUM ADVERTIT=*animadvertit, perceived.*

25. RIPA - - MUNITA, *the bank moreover had been* (i.e. was) *defended by sharp stakes set up in front* (of it), i. e., driven into the ground in front or along the bank.

26. EJUSDEM - - - TEGEBANTUR, *and stakes of the same kind fixed down under water, were covered by the river.* These stakes were sharp pointed, and were driven into the ground close to each other. The Venerable Bede, who lived in England during the eighth century, states in his history, that the remains of these stakes existed in his time. These stakes were intended as a defensive barrier against the Romans, as it does not seem to have been the intention of the Britons to hazard a general engagement: their aim was to stop Caesar at the river.

28. PRAEMISSO EQUITATU, *sending forward the cavalry.* Abl. Abs.

29. EA, *with such*, lit. *with that.*

30. IERUNT, *for iverunt.*

31. QUUM - - - EXSTARENT, *though they were above* (lit. *stood out of*) *the water with the head only* (lit. *alone*), i. e., though only their heads were above the water. UT—MANDARENT, explains *eâ* and *eo.*

32. SE - - - MANDARENT, *fled*, lit. *betook themselves to flight.*

XIX.

THE PLAN THAT CASSIVELAUNUS PURSUES.

33. SUPRA. See chap. vii.

34. CONTENTIONIS, of *contending*, i.e., of successfully prolonging the struggle. DISMISSIS - - - COPIIS, *having sent away the greater part of his forces.*

1. SERVABAT (for *observabat*), *kept watching.* PAULULUMQUE - - - EXCEDEBAT, and *therefore retired a little from the beaten path* (i.e., the highway). For force of *que*, see page 20, line 1. LOCISQUE - - - SILVESTRIBUS, *in places difficult of access and full of woods.*

2. ATQUE, *and in addition*; see page 20, line 1. IIS REGIONIBUS, *in those neighborhoods.* H. 422, 1; S. 626.)

3. QUIBUS - - - COGNOVERAT, *in which he had learned that we would march*, lit. *would make our journey.* QUIBUS. H. 422, 1; S. 323. NOS - - FACTUROS (*esse*), depends upon *cognoverat.* NOS is the subject, and ITER the Dir. Obj. of *facturos* (*esse*). H. 551, 1; S. 507. IN SILVAS: see cap. 3, line 31.

5. SE - - EFFUNDERET, *spread themselves abroad*; *se* is Acc. Sing. referring to *equitatus.*

6. OMNIBUS - - SEMITISQUE, *by roads and by-ways all well known* (i.e., to the Britons).

7. EMITTEBAT sc. *Cassivelaunus, he was wont to send out.* H. 469, II.; S. 394.

8. Nostrorum equitum, *to* (lit. *of*) *our cavalry*. Obj Gen. H. 396, II. Hoc metu, *and by fear of this*, lit. *by this fear*.

9. Relinquebatur ut, *it remained*, i.e., *the* result was that - - The real subject of *relinquebatur* is *ut - poterant*. H. 556; III. 495, 2; S. 450.

10. Ab agmine, from *the main* (lit. *moving*) *body*. Discedi. Passive Impersonal; *it to be departed* (*by the cavalry*), i.e., that the cavalry should depart: supply *equitibus*.

11. Et tantum hostibus noceretur, *and* (that) *the enemies were injured so far*, lit. *it was injured to the enemy, so much*. H. 301, 3. 385; S. 288, 128.

12. Quantum - - - poterant *as the legionary soldiers were able to* (i.e., could) *accomplish* (this) *amid fatigue and marching*, i.e., amid the fatigue attendant upon a long and toilsome march.

XX.

THE TRINOBANTES SUBMIT.

14. Trinobantes. The territory of this people embraced the modern counties of Essex and Middlesex. Prope firmissima, *almost the most powerful*, i.e., warlike.

15. Adolescens, *the youth*, or *young man*. *Adolescens* was a young person between *puer* and *juvenis*, or between fifteen or thirty years of age, though sometimes a person over forty was called *adolescens*.

16. Caesaris, - - - secutus, *seeking the protection of Caesar*. Continentem Galliam, the *continent of Gaul*; a singular construction. Similar ones, however, are found in Livy and Nepos.

17. Regnum obtinuerat *had got possession* of (i.e., possessed) *the supreme power*.

18. Ipse, sc., *Mandubratius*.

19. Fuga. Abl. Mittunt: the subject is *Trinobantes* in line 14.

20. Pollicentur has for its Dir. Obj. the clause *sese - - - facturos* (*esse*). Sese the object of *dedituros esse* —the subject being omitted. H. 545. 2. II For omission of *esse*. H. 545, 3. 507. Sese ei. H. 384. II.; S. 287.

21. Petunt ut defendat, *they entreat* (him, i.e., Caesar) *to protect*. H. 531, 567. VI. 1; S. 451. Cassivelauni, *from; on the part of*. lit. *of*: Subj. Genit. H. 396, I.

22. Atque *and in addition*. Mittat sc. *eum*, to *send him* (Mandubratius): qui praesit, *to preside* (over it), lit. *that he* (i.e., Mandubratius) *may preside* (over it). H. 500; S. 478. Qui = *ut is*.

23. His. Dat. 384, 2; S. 287. Exercitui *for the army*; apparently depends upon *frumentum*. H. 392. II. 1.

25. ILLI, i.e. *Trinobantes.* AD NUMERUM, *to the number*, i.e., specified. FRUMENTA, *an abundant supply of corn.* Note the force of the plural.

XXI.

OTHER TRIBES SUBMIT TO CAESAR.

27. TRINOBANTIBUS DEFENSIS, the *Trinobantes* being *protected*, i.e., against Cassivelaunus. ATQUE - - - PROHIBITIS, *and in addition secured from all violence on the part of the soldiers.* MILITUM, Subjective Genitive, H. 396, I.

28. CENIMAGNI. These were also called *Iceni*; their chief town was *Venta*, now Caister, near Norwich. SEGONTIACI. The exact situation of their territory is not known, but it was probably in the neighborhood of the modern Carnarvon. ANCALITES. These were neighbors of the *Trinobantes*; very little is known about them; probably they occupied a part of the modern Berkshire.

29. BIBRACI. These inhabited what now forms the north-west part of Berkshire—their chief town being *Bibracte* now Bray. CASSI. Of these nothing is known—except that their territory was on the left bank of the Thames.

30. NON LONGE — ABESSE, *that the capital town of Cassivelaunus is not far distant from this place;* depends upon *cognoscit.* MUNITUM agrees with *oppidum.*

21. QUO – CONVENERIT, *whither* (*into which*) . . . *has flocked.* Note the force of Subj.: as Caesar's informants say.

32. OPPIDUM - - - VOCANT, *the Britons, however, call it a town*; *oppidum* is complementary Acc. of *vocant*—the Dir. Obj. being implied rather than expressed in the clause—*quum silvas*, &c.

35. CONSUERUNT, *have been* (and still are) *wont to assemble.* Note force of Perfect. EO, *thither* i.e. *to that place.*

1. LOCUM, *the place* (in question). EGREGIE - - - MUNITUM, *excellently fortified by nature and by art*, i.e. its position was well chosen, and the means of defence adopted of a superior description.

2. DUABUS EX PARTIBUS, *in two directions* lit. *from two quarters.*

3. PAULISPER MORATI, (though) *remaining for short time.*

4. SESE EJECERUNT, *rushed* lit., *threw themselves out.* *Repertus*, sc. est.

6. MULTIQUE: refers to *hostes.*

XXII.

MORE TRIBES SUBMIT TO CAESAR.

CASSIVELAUNUS: subject of *mittit* and *imperat*, QUOD depends upon *demonstravimus*, and is the subj. of *esse.*

2. AD MARE, *on the sea-coast.* SUPRA : see Chap. XIII.
9. REGIONIBUS, Dat. H. 386 ; S. 292.
11. IMPERAT has *his* for Indir. Obj., and the clause *uti, coactis* — *oppugnent* for Direct, H. CASTRA NAVALIA, *the naval camp:* referred to on page 17, lines 15 to 19.
12. DE IMPROVISO, *suddenly*, i.e. when the Romans were least expecting an attack. OPPUGNENT, *for expugnent, storm.* II, i.e. *hostes.*
14. CAPTO ETIAM, *having also been captured.*
15. CASSIVELAUNUS : subject of *mittat* in line 18. HOC PROELIO NUNTIATO=*when* (the result of) *this battle was reported* (to him). Abl. Abs.
16. MAXIME ETIAM PERMOTUS, (and) *further being most of all alarmed.* For position and force of *etiam* see H. 587,4, and Zumpt, 335.
17. PER ATREBATEM COMMIUM, *by the aid of* (lit. through the means of) *Commius the Atrebatian.* For force of *per* see Zumpt, 455, with explanation.
19. CAESAR: subject of *imperat* in line 22. QUUM STATUISSET, *since he had decided* i.e. made up his mind, H. 517 ; S. 483. IN CONTINENTI, *on the continent* i.e. in Gaul.
20. MOTUS, *movements* i.e. the revolts which he had good reason to apprehend. NEQUE MULTUM =*et quum non multum.* For force of *neque* see Zumpt, 535. MULTUM AESTATIS, H. 295, 2, 3) ; S. 270.
21. ATQUE QUUM, *and since also* (or *in addition*). ID - - - POSSE, *that this* (*i. e., the remainder of the summer*) *could easily be wasted*, lit. *protracted*, i. e. if he remained in Britain.
22. QUID VECTIGALIS *what tribute*, lit. *what of tribute.* H. 396, 2, 3); S. 270 : Direct Obj. of *penderet.* The clause *quid - - penderet* is the Dir. Obj. of *constituat.* INTERDICIT ET IMPERAT, *forbids and commands.*
25. NE - - FACIAT. H. 558, VI.; S. 451.

XXIII.

CAESAR RETURNS TO THE CONTINENT..

27. NAVES - - - REFECTAS, *he finds the ships repaired.*
HIS DEDUCTIS, *these being launched ;* lit. *drawn down to the sea ;* supply *ad mare.* They had been drawn up on land according to the custom of the Ancients. QUOD ET, *both because.*
28. ET sc. *quod, and* (*because*).
29. TEMPESTATE. H. 426, I.; S. 322. DEPERIERANT, *had been lost*, lit. *had perished.* DUOBUS COMMEATIBUS, *by two embarkations.*
31. TOT NAVIGATIONIBUS, *in so many voyages.* H. 422, 1, 2); S. 326. NEQUE HOC, sc. *anno.*
32. ULLA OMNINO NAVIS, *any vessel at all*, i.e., a single vessel. QUAE - - - PORTARET, *which carried soldiers*, i.e., any soldier carrying vessel, Why Subjunc. ? H. 501, II.; S. 479.

33. DESIDERARETUR, *was lost* (or *missing*). INANES, *empty;* complementary nominative after *remitterentur.*

34. ET PRIORIS - - - MILITIBUS, *after the soldiers of the first convoy had been landed.* Abl. Abs. The *et* seems pleonastic; but some render, *et prioris - - et quas - - both* (*of those ships sent back*) *after*, &c. - - - *and* (of those) - - - *which*, &c., making the two clauses explain, *quae inanes remitterentur.* We cannot, however, correctly apply *remitterentur* to those vessels which Labienus built after Caesar had set out for Britain.

35. QUAS - - - CURAVERAT, *which - - Labienus had afterwards caused to be built.* A. L. P. C. 356.

36. POSTEA, i. e. after Caesar had set out for Britain

1. NUMERO. Abl. of Specif. H. 429. SEXAGINTA. Indeclin. Adj. agreeing with *quas.*

PERPAUCAE, *very few;* construe before *ex iis*, page 22, line 33. LOCUM CAPERENT, *reached the* (destined) *place*, i. e., the island.

2. RELIQUAE FERE, OMNES, *nearly all the rest:* lit. *the rest nearly all.* H. 441, 6; S. 341. RELIQUAE, SC. NAVES. QUAS=HAS.

3. FRUSTRA, *in vain.* Distinguish between *frustra*, *in vain*, of a person who has not attained his purpose, and *nequidquam*, *in rain*, so far as nothing has resulted from a thing done. NE—*lest; that—not.* H. 490; S. 449. QUOD - - - SUBERAT, *inasmuch as the equinox was at hand.* H. 520; S. 486.

4. NECESSARIO - - - COLLOCAVIT, *he of necessity stowed his soldiers more compactly* (than he otherwise would have done), i. e., he loaded his vessels more heavily than usual.

5. SUMMA - - - CONSEQUUTA, *as a dead* (lit. *very great*) *calm ensued.* Abl. Abs. SECUNDA VIGILIA INITA, *at the beginning of the second watch.*

6. QUUM SOLVISSET, sc. *naves*, *after he had set sail*, lit. *had unloosed* (his ships).

7. PRIMA LUCE, *at first light*, i. e., *at day break.*

VOCABULARY.

A

ā, ăb, abs, *prep. with Abl.* [*Sanscr.* ap-a; Gr. ἀπό], from, of, by, on; after, at the hands of.
abdo, dĕre dĭdi, dĭtum, *3 tr.* [*ab; do*, to put], to put away; to hide, conceal.
ăbesse. See *absum.*
ăbĭes, ĕtis, *f.* the fir tree.
abjĭcĭo, ĕre, jēci, jectum, *3 tr.* [*ab; jacio*, to cast], to cast or throw away.
absisto, ĕre, stĭti, stĭtum, *3 intr.* [*ab; sisto*, to stand], to stand away from, to withdraw.
absum, esse, fŭi, *intr.* [*ab; sum*, to be], to be away from; to be distant from.
ac. See *atque.*
accēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, *3 intr.* [*ad; cedo*, to go], to go near, to approach, to be added.
accĭdo, ĕre, cĭdi, *3 intr* [*ad; cado*, to fall], to fall upon, to fall out, to happen, *accidit*, impers. it happens.
accĭpĭo, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, *tr.* [*ad; capio*, to take], to receive, get, obtain.
ăcĭes, ĭei, f. [*ac*, root of *ac-uo*, to sharpen], an edge; order or line of battle; an army.
ācrĭter, *adv.* [acer, acris, sharp], sharply, vigorously, **comp. ācrĭus,** supl. **ācerrĭme.**
actŭārĭus, ă, um, *adj.* [*ago*, to put in motion], easily moved, swift, fleet. See note, p. 1.
ăcūtus, a, um, *adj.* [*acuo*, to sharpen], sharp, pointed.
ăd, *prep. with Acc.*, to, up to, towards, for, according to, &c.
addūco, ĕre, duxi, ductum, *3 tr.* [*ad; duco*, to lead], to lead to, or up; to induce, lead on.
ădaequo, āre, āvi, ātum, *1 tr.* [*ad; aequo*, to equal], to make equal, keep up to.
ădĕo, īre, īvi or ĭi, ĭtum, *intr. irr.* [*ad; eo*, to go], to go to, approach.
ădĕo, adv. [prob. for *ad; eum*] so much, to such degree, so that.

ădĭmo, ĕre, ēmi, emptum, 3 *tr.* [*ad; emo,* to take], to take away, remove.

adjĭcĭo, ĕre, jēci, jectum, *tr.* [*ad; jacio,* to cast], to cast or throw upon, hurl, join.

adjŭvo, āre, jūvi, jūtum, 1 *tr.* and *intr.* [*ad; juvo,* to assist], to aid, help, assist.

admĭnistro, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*ad; ministro,* to act the part of a servant], to manage, execute, perform.

admŏdum, *adv.* [*ad; modus,* a measure], very, exceedingly; *with numerals,* about, pretty nearly.

ădŏlescens, entis, *m.* [*adolesco,* to grow up], a young person, a young man.

ădŏrĭor, orīri, ortus sum, 4 *dep.* [*ad; orior,* to rise], to rise against, fall upon, attack.

adsum, esse, fŭi, *intr. irr.* [*ad; sum,* to be], to be at; to be present, to be on hand.

adventus, ūs, *m.* [*advenio,* to come to], arrival, approach, coming.

adversus, a, um, *adj.* [*adverto,* to turn towards], opposite, adverse, unfavorable.

ad-verto, ĕre, ti, sum, 3 *tr.* [*ad; verto,* to turn], to turn to or towards; *animum* advertere, to turn the mind to, *i.e.,* to perceive.

ad-vŏlo, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*ad; volo,* to fly], to fly to or towards; to hasten, spring up.

aedĭfĭcĭum, i, *n.* [*aedifico,* to build], edifice, building.

aedĭfĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*aedes: facio,* to make], to make a building, to construct, build.

Aedŭi, ōrum, *m. plur.,* a powerful people in *Gallia Celtica,* between the Liger (*Loire*) and the Arar (*Saone*).

Aedŭus, a, um, *adj.,* Aeduan. **Aedŭus, i,** *m.,* an Aeduan.

aegre, *adv.* [*aeger, aegri,* sick], with difficulty; *comp.* **aegrĭus;** *supl.* **aegerrĭme.**

aequĭnoctĭum, i, *n.* [*aequus,* equal; *nox,* night], the Equinox; the time when the days and nights are of equal length.

aes, aeris, *n.* [akin to *Sanscr.* ayas, iron], bronze, copper, money.

aestās, ātis, *f.* [akin to αἴθω, to burn], the burning season, the summer.

aestĭmo, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*aes,* money], to estimate the value of; to judge, determine, estimate.

aestus, ūs, *m.* [the burning], the tide.

aetās, ātis, *f.* [for **aevtas,** fr. *aevum,* life], life, lifetime, age.

afflīgo, ĕre, xi, ctum, 3 *tr.* [*ad; fligo,* to strike], to dash to or against; to shatter, damage.

afrĭcus, i, *m.,* the south-west wind.

ăger, agri, *m.* [akin to Gr. ἀγ-ρός], a field, land; **agri,** fields, country, territory, district.

agger, ĕris, *m.* [*ad*; *gero*, to bring], a heap, mound.

aggrĕgo, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*ad*; *grex*, *gregis*, a flock], to attach to, join.

agmĕn, ĭnis, *n.* [for *agimen*, fr. *ago*], to put in motion], an army on the march, a line of march; a troop, band.

ălacrĭtās, ātis, *f.* [*alacer*, quick], alacrity, ardor.

albus, a, um, *adj.* [Gr. ἀλφός], white.

alĭēnus, a, um, *adj.* [*alius*, another], another's, hostile; unfavorable, unsuitable.

ălĭquamdĭu [aliquam; diu, long], for some long or considerable time.

ălĭquantus, a, um, *adj.* [alius, another; quantus, how great], a little, some, somewhat; **aliquantum,** *n.*, somewhat, &c.

ălĭquis or ălĭqui, qua, quod or quid, *indef. pron.*, some one, any one; something, anything, some.

ălĭus, a, ud, *gen*, *alius*, dat. *alii*, adj. [akin to Gr. ἄλλος], another, other, of many; *alius - - - alius*, one - - - another, *alii - - - alii*, some - - - others.

ălo, ĕre, ŭi, ălĭtum, and **altum,** *tr.* [akin to Gr. ἄλθω, to make to grow], to nourish, maintain, rear.

alter, a, um, gen. *alterius*: dat. *alteri*, *adj.* [akin to *alius*], one; the one - - - the other (of two); the second, *alter - - - alter*, the one - - - the other.

altĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.* [*altus*, high], height, depth.

altus, a, um, *adj.* [*alo*, to nourish], high, lofty; comp. *altior*; supl. *altissimus*.

āmentĭa, ae, *f.* [*amens*, foolish], folly, infatuation.

ămĭcĭtĭa, ae, *f* [*amicus*, a friend], friendship.

ămīcus, a, um, *adj.* [*amo*, to love], friendly, loving, kind; **amīcus, i,** *m.*, a friend.

āmitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, 3 *tr.* [*a*; *mitto*, to let go], to send away, dismiss; to lose, let pass.

amplĭus, *comp. adv.* [*amplus*], more, longer, further; with numerals, more, beyond.

amplus, a, um, *adj.* [*am*, *around*; *pleo*, to fill], large, spacious, of large extent; comp. **amplĭor,** supl. **amplissĭmus.**

Ancălĭtes, um, *m.*, the Ancalites, a people in the south-east of Britain.

ancŏra, ae, *f.* [Gr. ἄγκυρα], an anchor.

angŭlus, i, *m.* [Gr. ἀγκύλος, bent], an angle, corner.

anguste, *adv.* [*angustus*, narrow], narrowly, closely; comp. **angustĭus.**

angustus, a, um, *adj.* [*ango*, to press together], narrow close; contracted, steep

ănĭmadverto, ĕre, ti, sum, 3 *tr.* [*animus; adverto*, to turn towards], to perceive, observe.
ănĭmus, i, *m.*, the mind, disposition, courage, resolution, spirit, arrogance, pleasure.
annōtĭnus, a, um, *adj.* [*annus*, a year], a year old; of the previous year.
annus, i, *m.* [akin to Sanscr. AM, to go; Gr. ἔνος, a year], a year.
anser, ĕris, *m.* [akin to Gr. χήν], a goose.
ante, *prep. with Acc.* [Gr. ἀντί, over against], before; **ante,** *adv.*, before, previously.
antĕā, *adv.* [prob. for *ante*; *eam*, fem. Acc. of is], before, formerly, previously.
antĕpōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, 3 *tr.* [*ante; pono*, to place], to place before, prefer; *antĕponendus, a, um*, gerundive.
ăpertus, a, um, *adj.* [*aperio*, to uncover], open, exposed, unprotected.
appello, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*ad; pello*], to approach, accost, address, name, call.
appello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum, 3 *tr.* [*ad; pello*, to drive], to drive to, move to; of ships, to steer for, direct towards.
Appĭus, i, *m.* Appius, a Roman's name.
apporto, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*ad; porto*, to carry], to bring, convey.
appropinquo, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *intr.* [*ad; propinquo*, to come near], to draw near, approach.
aptus, a, um, *adj.* [apo, to lay hold], fit, suitable, adapted, skilful.
ăpŭd, *prep. with Acc.*, with, amongst, at, near,
ăqua, ae, *f.* [akin to Sanscr. ap, water], water.
ăquĭla, ae, [akin to Gr. ὠκύς, swift], an eagle; the standard of the Roman legion.
ăquĭlĭfer, ĕri, *m.* [*aquila; fero*, to bear], the eagle-bearer, standard-bearer.
arbĭter, tri, *m.*, an arbiter, umpire, judge.
arbĭtror, āri, ātus sum, 1 *dep.* [*arbiter*, an umpire], to judge, think, conclude.
arbor and **arbos, ŏris,** *f.*, a tree.
arcesso, ĕre, sīvi, sītum, 3 *tr.* [*ad; cedo*, to go], to cause to approach, call, send for, summon.
Ardŭenna, ae, *f.* [Celtic *ard*, hard; *venna*, pasture]. *Arduenna*, an extensive forest in Gallia Belgica, now Ardennes.
ārĭdus, a, um, *adj.* [*arco*, to be dry], dry; **ārĭdum, i,** *n.*, dry land.
arma, ōrum, *n.*, [prob. Gr. ἄρω, to adapt], arms, weapons; *of a ship*, tackling, rigging.

armāmenta, ōrum, *n.* [*arma—arms*] tackling, *i.e.* rigging, cordage, sails, &c.
armātūra, ae, *f.* [*arma—arms*], armour, equipment.
armo, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*arma—arms*], to arm, equip, fit out.
aspectus, ūs, *m.* [**aspĭcio,** to see, to look at], a glance, look; appearance, aspect.
ăt, *conj.* [akin to Gr. ἀτάρ, but], but, yet.
ătquĕ [contr. *ac.*], *conj.* (*ad*, in addition; *que*, and), and, and also, and in addition; with comparatives, than; after words denoting similarity as, with; *simul atque*, as soon as; *aliter atque*, otherwise than.
Atrĕbātes, um, *m.*, the Atrebates, a people of Gallia Belgica. **Atrĕbas ătis,** *m.*, one of the Atrebates.
Atrĭus, i, *m.*, Atrius (Quintus), a Roman officer whom Caesar left in charge of his fleet while making an incursion into Britain, L. ix.
attingo, ĕre, tĭgi, tactum, 3 *tr.* [*ad; tango*, to touch], to touch, touch or border upon, reach, arrive at.
auctōrĭtās, ātis, *f.* [*auctor*, fr. *augeo*, to increase], influence, authority, weight of character.
audacter, *adv.* [*audax*, bold], boldly; *comp.* **audācĭus**; *supl.* **audācissĭme.**
audĕo, ēre, ausus sum, 2 *semi-dep.*, to dare, venture, undertake, attempt.
audĭo, īre, īvi, ītum, 4 *tr.* [akin to οὖς=οὖς, an ear], to hear, listen to, obey.
aurīga, ae. *m.* [prob. *aurea*, a bridle; *ago*, to manage], a driver, charioteer.
Auruncŭlēius, i, *m.* Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, one of Caesar's lieutenants, iv. 22.
aut, *conj.*, or; *aut - - - aut*, either - - - or.
autem, *conj.* [akin to Gr. αὐτάρ], but, on the other hand, moreover; while.
auxĭlĭor, āri, ātus sum, 1 *dep.* [*auxilium*, aid], to help, aid, succor.
auxĭlĭum, i, *n.* [*augeo*, to increase], help, aid, assistance, support; **auxĭlĭa, ōrum,** *n.*, *auxiliaries*, auxiliary troops or forces.

B

barbărus, i, *m.* Gr. βάρβαρος, a barbarian; *barbarus, a, um*, *adj.*, barbarian.
Belgae, ārum, *m.*, the Belgae, or Belgians, a powerful and warlike people of German and Celtic origin dwelling in the Northern part of Gaul, between the Rhenus (*Rhine*), the Sequana (*Seine*), the Matrona (*Marne*), and the North Sea.

bellum, i, *n.* [*duellum* fr. *duo*, two], war.
bĕnĕfĭcĭum, i, *n.* [*bene; facio*, to make], kindness, benefit, favour.
Bĭbŏci, ōrum, *m.*, the Bribroci, a people of Britain.
bĭdŭum, i, *n.* [*bis; dies*, a day], two days, a space of two days.
bĭpartīto, *adv.* [*bipartitus*], in two parts or divisions.
bŏnus, ă, um, *adj.*, good, kind, excellent; *comp.* **mĕlĭor**; *supl.* **optĭmus.**
brĕvis, e, *adj.* [akin to Gr. βραχύς, short], short; *comp.* **brĕvĭor**; *supl.* **brĕvissĭmus.**
Brĭtanni, ōrum, *m.*, the Britons.
Brĭtannĭa, ae, *f*, the island of Britain.
Brĭtannĭcus, a, um, *adj.* [*Britannia*], of or pertaining to Britain, British, Britannic.
Brūma, ae, *f.* [for brev.ma, *i.e.* brevi-ma, *i.e.* brevissima], the shortest (day) in the year; the winter solstice; winter.

C

cădo, ĕre, cĕcĭdi, căsum, 3 *tr.* [akin to Sanscr. root çad, to fall], to fall, fall down, perish.
caerŭlĕus, a, um, dark coloured, deep-blue.
Caesar, ăris, *m.* [hairy one], Caius Julius Caesar; consult life.
Cāius, i, *m.*, a Roman praenomen.
Cantĭum, i, *n.* Cantium, a district of Britain, now Kent.
capillus, i, *m.* [caput], the hair.
căpĭo, ĕre, cēpi, captum, 3 *tr.*, to take, receive, lay hold of, reach, choose.
captīvus, i, *m* [capio], a prisoner, captive.
căput ĭtis, *n.* [akin to Gr. κεφαλή], the head, the individual.
căro, carnis, *f.* [akin to Gr. κρέας], flesh.
Carvĭlĭus, i, *m.* Carvilius, one of the four kings of Kantium; v. 22.
căsa, ae, *f.* [for skad-sa fr. Sanscr. skad—to cover]; a hut, cottage, barrack.
Cassi, ōrum, *m.* a small tribe in the south of Britain; v. 21.
Cassivelaunus, i, *m.* Cassivelaunus, a commander of the Britons; v. 11, 18, 22.
castra, ōrum, *n.* [from Sanscr. root skad—to cover]; a camp, encampment. **castrum, i,** *n.* a tent.
cāsus, ūs, *m.* [for *cad-sus*, fr. *cado*, to fall]; that which comes to pass, a happening, event, a misfortune.
causa, ae, *f.* a cause, reason; *Abl. causa*, for the purpose of, on account of.

cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, 3 *intr.* [akin to Gr. χάζομαι, to retire]; to go, go forth, go away, to yield, retire.
cĕler, ĕris, ĕre, *adj.* swift, rapid, quick, speedy; *comp.* **celerior,** *supl.* **cĕlerrĭmus.**
cĕlĕrĭtas, ātis, *f.* (cĕler, swift), swiftness, speed, despatch, quickness.
cĕlĕrĭter, *adv.* (cĕler) speedily, quickly, rapidly; *comp.* **cĕlĕrĭus,** *supl.* **cĕlerrime.**
Cenimagni, orum, *m.* a people in the south of Britain; v. 22.
centum, *num. indecl.* a hundred.
centŭrĭo, ōnis, *m.* (*centum*), a centurion—a commander of a hundred.
Cingĕtŏrix, ĭgĭs, *m.*, Cingetorix, a rival of Indutiomarus, v. 3; one of the four kings or chiefs of Kent.
cĭrcĭter, *adv.* [*circ-us*, a circle], about, near, nearly.
circuĭtus, ūs, *m.* [*circumeo*, to go around], a circuit, circumference; a going around.
circum, *prep. with Acc.* [*circus*, a circle], round, about, near; *adv.*, around, about, all around.
circumdo, ăre, dĕdi, dătum, 1 *tr.* [*circum*, around; do, to give], to surround, inclose.
circumsisto, ĕre, stĕti, 3 *tr.* [*circum; sisto*, to stand], to stand around, enclose, surround.
cĭtĕrĭor, us, *adj. comp.*, on this side, hither. H. 166, S.
cĭto, *adv.* [*cieo*, to cause to go], quickly, rapidly; *comp.* **cĭtĭus;** *supl.* **citissĭme.**
cīvĭtās, ātis, *f.* [*civis*, a citizen], a body of citizens; citizenship; a state, commonwealth.
clam, *adv.* [akin to Gr. καλυπτω, to cover], secretly, privately, by stealth.
classis, is, *f.* [Gr. κλάσις=κλῆσις, a calling], a fleet.
coepi, coepisse, *tr.* defect, to begin, commence. H. 297, S.
cŏercĕo, ĕre, ŭi, ĭtum, 2 *tr.* [*con; arceo*, to shut up], to enclose on all sides; to restrain, check.
cognosco, ĕre, nōvi, nĭtum, *tr.* [*con; nosco*, to know], to know, learn, ascertain, discover, examine.
cōgo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, 3 *tr.* [*con; ago*, to drive], to drive together, collect, assemble, compel.
cŏhors, tis, *f.* poss. [akin to χορτας and *hortus*], a cohort; the tenth part of a legion.
cŏhortor, āri, ātus sum, 1 *dep.* [*con; hortor*, to exhort], to encourage, advise animate.
collaudo, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*con; laudo*, to praise], to praise, commend highly, extol.
collĭgo, ĕre, lēgi, lectum, *tr.* [*con; lego*, to collect], to collect together, assemble, to form in a body.
collis, is, *m.* [akin to Gr. κολώνη], a hill.

collŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*con ; loco,* to place], to put place, station, quarter.

cŏlo, ĕre, ŭi, cultum, *tr.*, to work, till, cultivate.

cŏlor, ōris, *m.*, color, complexion, tint.

commĕātus, ūs, *m.* [*comme(a)o,* to go to and fro], a voyage convoy, passage.

commendo, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*com ; mando,* to commit], to commend, entrust, commit, *i.e.*, for protection.

commīlĭto, ōnis, *m.* [*con ; miles,* a soldier], a comrade, fellow-soldier.

committo, ĕre, mīsi, missum, *tr.* [*con ; mitto,* to send], to entrust, trust; to commence, join, engage in.

Commĭus, i, *m.*, Commius, a leader of the Atrebates.

commŏde, *adv.* [*commodus,* convenient], conveniently, suitably; *comp.* **commŏdĭus**; *supl.* **commŏdissime.**

commŏdum, i, *n.*, advantage, profit, gain; convenience.

commŏdus, a, um, *adj.* [*con*—*cum,* with; *modum,* a manner], convenient, suitable, advantageous; *comp.* **commŏdĭor**; *supl.* **commŏdissĭmus.**

commŏror, āri, atus sum, 1 *dep.* [*con ; moror,* to delay], to stop, delay, tarry, linger.

commūnis, e, *adj.* [*com,* together; *munis,* serving], general, public.

commūtātĭo, ōnis, *f.* [*commuto,* to change thoroughly], a changing, change, alteration.

compăro, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*con ; paro,* to bring], to prepare with zeal, make ready, acquire, obtain.

compello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum, 3 *tr.* [*con ; pello,* to drive], to drive together, collect, compel, drive.

compĕrĭo, īre, pĕri, pertum, 4 *tr.*, to find out, learn, ascertain.

complĕo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, 2 *tr.* [*con ; pleo,* to fill], to fill, make full, complete.

complūres, plūra (and **plūrĭa**) [*con ; plures,* more], several, very many, many.

comporto, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*con ; porto,* to carry], to bring together, collect, convey.

comprĕhendo, ĕre, di, sum, 3 *tr.* [*con ; prehendo,* to lay hold of], to take, lay hold of, seize.

concĭlĭo, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*concilium,* a union], to conciliate, unite, reconcile.

concĭlĭum, i, *m.* [*concieo,* to collect], a meeting, council, assembly.

concursus, ūs, *m.* [*con ; curro,* to run together], a running together, onset, attack, collision.

confercĭo, īre, fersi, fertum, 4 *tr.* [*con ; farcio,* to stuff], to crowd, press together.

confĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *tr. irr.* [*con : fero*, to bear], to bear, or bring together, charge, betake, throw, cast.
confestim, *adv.*, immediately, speedily, without delay.
confīdo, ĕre, fīsus sum, 3 *semi-dep.* [*con ; fido*, to trust], to trust confidently, rely upon, hope, confide in.
confirmo, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*con ; firmus*, strong], to make strong, strengthen, confirm, establish.
conflīgo, ĕre, flixi, flictum, 3 *tr.* [*con ; fligo*, to dash], to strike together; *intr.* to come or enter into conflict, engage; contend.
conjĭcĭo, ĕre, jēci, jectum, 3 *tr.* [*con ; jacio*, to cast], to hurl, throw; to rout, put to flight.
conjungo, ĕre, junxi, junctum, 3 *tr.* [*con ; jungo*, to join], to join together, unite.
conjūrātĭo, ōnis, *f.* [*conjur(a)o*, to swear together], a plot, conspiracy, confederation.
conscendo, ĕre, di, sum, 3 *tr.* [*con ; scando*, to climb], to mount, to ascend; to go on board, embark.
consĕquor, i, quūtus sum, 3 *dep.* [*con ; sequor*, to follow], to follow or go after; to pursue; to obtain.
consīdo, ĕre, sēdi, sessum, 3 *intr.* [*con ; sedeo*, to sit], to sit down together, settle; to take one's station; encamp.
consĭlĭum, i, *n.* [*consulo*, to deliberate], a plan, purpose, design; counsel, measures, judgment; an assembly; council of war.
consĭmĭlis, e, *adj.* [*con ; similis*, like], very similar, quite like.
consisto, ĕre, stĭti, stĭtum, 3 *intr.* [*con ; sisto*, to place one's self=to stand], to stand still, remain standing; to take up a position, make a stand.
consōlor, āri, ātus sum, 1 *dep.* [*con ; solor*, to comfort], to console earnestly, comfort.
conspectus, ūs, *m.* [*conspicio*, to see], a sight, view.
conspĭcĭo, ĕre, spexi, spectum, 3 *tr.* [*con ; specio*, to see], to see, behold, observe.
conspĭcor, āri, ātus sum, 1 *dep.* [*conspicio*, to see], to see, behold, descry, get a sight of.
constĭtŭo, ĕre, ŭi, ūtum, 3 *tr.* [*con ; statuo*, to place], to put, place, establish; to station, post; to erect, construct; to appoint, determine, resolve; to levy.
consto, āre, stĭti, stātum, 1 *intr.* [*con ; sto*, to stand], to stand firm; *constat*, it is evident; *constabat*, it was evident.
consŭesco, ĕre, ēvi, ētum, 3 *intr. inch.* [*consues-co*, to be accustomed], to become accustomed; wont.
consŭētūdo, ĭnĭs, *f.* [*consuesco*, to be wont], custom, habit, use, usage; intimacy, manner of living.
consul, ŭlĭs, *m.*, a consul; one of the two highest magistrates at Rome, chosen annually after the expulsion of the kings.

consŭlo, ĕre, ŭi, tum, 3 *tr.* and *intr.*, to consult, take counsel, deliberate, consider, have regard for; **consŭlo—te—tĭbi—in te,** to consult thee—for thee—against thee.

consulto, *adv.* [*consultum*, a deliberation], designedly; with deliberation; on purpose.

consūmo, ĕre, sumpsi, sumptum, 3 *tr.* [*con; sumo*, to take], to consume, devour; to pass, spend.

contendo, ĕre, di, tum, 3 *tr.* and *intr.* [*con; tendo*, to stretch], to endeavour, strive, exert one's self for, make efforts, maintain; to direct one's course to, to hasten, arrive at, march; to contend with, fight, strive against.

contentĭo, ōnis, *f.* [*contendo*, to strive], contest, exertion, struggle, dispute, conflict.

contestor, āri, ātus sum, 1 *dep.* [*con; testor*, to call to witness], to call to witness, to invoke, *i.e.* the gods.

continens, entis, *f.* [*continens*, pres. part of contineo, to hold together], the mainland, continent; Abl. sing. **e** or **i.**

contĭnĕo, ēre, ŭi, tentum, 3 *tr.* [*con; teneo*, to hold], to hold together; to restrain, confine one's self.

contĭnŭus, a, um, *adj.* [*contineo*, to hold together], successive, following one another, uninterrupted.

contrā, *prep.* and *adv.*, 1 *prep. with Acc.*, against, over against, opposite to; 2 *adv.* on the contrary, differently; *contra atque*, otherwise than; also *contro* in *comp.*

contrăho, ĕre, traxi, tractum, 3 *tr.* [*con; traho*, to draw], to draw together, collect, unite; to reduce, contract.

contŭlĕrat. See *confero.*

convĕnĭo, īre, vēni, ventum, 4 *intr.* [*con; venio*, to come], to come together, assemble, collect.

conventus, ūs, *m.* [*convenio*, to come together], a meeting, assembly, court, assizes.

converto, ĕre, ti, sum, 3 *tr.* [*con; verto*, to turn], to turn.

convŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*con; voco*, to call], to call together, summon.

co-ŏrĭor, īri, ortus sum [*con; orior*, to rise], to rise together; to arise, spring up.

cōpĭa, ae, *f.* [*con; ops*, means], plenty, abundance; **copiae,** troops, forces; resources.

cōram, *adv.* [*con; os*, the face], in person, personally, with one's own eyes.

corpus, ŏris, *n.*, the body.

Cōrus, i, *m.*, the north-west wind.

Cotta, ae, *m.*, Cotta [Lucius Aurunculeius], one of Caesar's lieutenants.

crēber, bra, brum, *adj.* [fr. root *cre* of *cresco*, to increase], frequent, numerous, many, abounding in; thick set with; *comp.* **crēbĭor;** *supl.* **creber-rimus.**

crēdo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, 3 *tr.* and *intr.*, to believe, trust, rely upon, to entrust, commit.

culpa, ae, *f.*, a fault, crime; guilt, blame.

cum, *prep. with Abl.*, with, together with, among; *written after pronouns, i.e.* **nobiscum, quibuscum**; **com** and **con** in *comp.* are forms of *cum.*

cunctor, āri, ātus sum, 1 *dep.*, to delay, linger, hesitate.

cŭpide, *adv.* [*cupidus*, eager], eagerly, zealously, with zeal; *comp.* **cŭpĭdĭus**; *supl.* **cŭpĭdissĭme.**

cŭpĭdus, a, um [*cupio*, to desire], eager, desirous, fond of; *comp.* **cŭpĭdĭor**; *supl.* **cŭpĭdissimus.**

cur, *adv.* [contr. for *cui, rei* or *qua re*] why? wherefore? for what reason?

cūro, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*cura*, a care], to care for, attend to, provide for.

cursus, ūs, *m.* [*curro*, to run], running, speed; course; passage, voyage.

D

dē, *prep. with Abl.*, from, away from; down from; out of, in, concerning.

dēbĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, 2 *tr.* [contr. fr. *de+habeo*; fr. *de*, from; *habeo*, to have] to owe, to be in debt; with the *inf.* to be bound (to do), ought.

dēcēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, 3 *intr.* [*de; cedo*, to go], to go from, depart.

dĕcem, *num. adj. indcl.* [akin to Gr. δέκα, ten], ten.

dēcerno, ĕre, crēvi, crētum, 3 *tr.* [*de; cerno*, to determine], to determine, decree, decide, resolve.

dĕcĭmus, a, um, *adj.* [*decem*, ten], tenth.

dēdĕcus, ŏris, *n.* [*de*, not; *decus*, honor], disgrace, dishonor, shame. See note.

dēdĭtĭo, ōnis, *f.* [*de-do*, to surrender], a surrendering, surrender, capitulation.

dēdo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, 3 *tr.* [*de*, from; *do*, to put], to give up, yield, surrender.

dēdūco, ĕre, duxi, ductum, 3 *tr.* [*de; duco*, to lead], to lead away, or from; withdraw.

dēfătīgo, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*de; fatigo*, to weary], to weary out, weary thoroughly, exhaust.

dēfectĭo, ōnis, *f.* [*deficio*, to fail], defection, desertion, revolt.

dēfendo, dĕre, di, sum, 3 *tr.*, to ward off, repel, keep off; to defend, protect.

dēfĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *tr. irreg.* [*de; fero*, to bring], to bring or carry down; to tell, inform; to confer upon; bestow.

dēfĭcĭo, ĕre, fēci, fectum, 3 *intr.* [*de; facio*, to make], to fail, fall away from; to be wanting; to revolt.
dēfīgo, ĕre, fixi, fixum, 3 *tr.* [*de; figo*, to fix], to fix down, fasten, drive down.
dēinceps, *adv.* [*deinde; capio*, to take], one after another, successively, in turn.
dēinde, *adv.* [*de; inde*, thence], thence, afterwards, then, next.
dējĭcĭo, ĕre, jēci, jectum, 3 *tr.* [*de; jacio*, to cast], to cast or throw down, dislodge, overthrow.
dēlĭgo, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*de; ligo*, to bind], to tie, bind, fasten.
dēlĭgo, ĕre, lēgi, lectum, 3 *tr.* [*de; lego*, to collect].
dēlĭtesco, ĕre, lĭtŭi, 3 *intr.* [*de; lateo*, to hide], to hide away, conceal one's self.
dēmĕto, ĕre, messŭi, messum, 3 *tr.* [*de; meto*, to mow], to mow or cut down; reap.
dēmitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, 3 *tr.* [*de; mitto*, to send], to send. thrust or let down; **demittĕre se,** to send one's self down, *i.e.* to descend.
dēmonstro, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*de; monstro*, to show], to show, point out.
dēni, ae, a, *adj. num. dist.* [*decem*, ten], ten, by ten, every ten, each ten.
dēnĭque, *adv.* [prob. for *deinque*], at length, at last.
densus, a, um, *adj.*, thick, dense, close, crowded; *comp.* **densĭor;** *supl.* **densissĭmus.**
dēpĕrĕo, īre, ĭi, *intr.* [*de; pereo*, to perish], to go to ruin, be lost, perish utterly.
dēpōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, 3 *tr.* [*de; pono*, to place], to put or lay down; to give up, deposit.
dēprĕcor, āri, ātus sum, 1 *dep.* [*de; precor*, to pray], to avert or ward off by prayer; to beseech, implore.
dēsĕro, ĕre, ŭi, tum, 3 *tr.* [*de; sero*, to join], to forsake, abandon, desert.
dēsīdĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*de; root-sid*, akin to Gr ἰ-δεῖν, to see], to long for, desire, miss, feel the want of, to lose.
dēsĭlĭo, īre, ŭi, or **ĭi, sultum,** 4 *intr.* [*de; salio*, to leap], to leap down; to alight, dismount.
dēsisto, ĕre, stĭti, stĭtum, 3 *intr.* [*de; sisto*, to stand), to stand from; to leave off, cease, desist.
dēsum, esse, fŭi, *int. irr.* [*de; sum*, to be], to be wanting, fail, be absent.
dēterrĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, 2 *tr.* [*de; terreo*, to frighten], to frighten away, terrify, deter.
dētrīmentum, i, *n.* [*detero*, to rub away], loss, damage, injury, detriment.
dĕus, i, *m.* [akin to Gr θεός, a god], a god, deity.

dī or **dis**, *insep. particle* [a negative prefix], apart from, not, &c.

dīco, ĕre, dixi, dictum, 3 *tr.* [akin to Gr. δείκ-νυμι, to show], to report, tell, speak, say.

dĭes, ēi, *m.* and *f.* [akin to Sanscr. div, a day], a day.

diffĕro, ferre, distŭli, dīlātum, *tr. irr.* [*dis*, a part; *fero*, to carry], to carry a part or in different directions; to scatter, put off; *intr.* to differ.

dignĭtās, ātis, *f.* [*dignus*, worthy], dignity, merit, worth, authority, rank, position.

dīmĭco, āre, āvi or **ŭi, ātum**, 1 *intr.* [*di*=*dis*; *mico*, to brandish], to fight, contend, struggle.

dīmĭdĭum, i, *n.* [*dimidius*, half], a half.

dīmitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, 3 *tr.* [*dis*: *mitto*, to send], to send a part or in different ways, dismiss.

discēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, 3 *intr.* [*dis*; *cedo*, to go], to go a part, depart, march from, leave.

discessus, ūs, *m.* [*discedo*], departure.

dispar, păris, *adj.* [*dis*; *par*, like—equal], unequal, unlike, dissimilar.

dispergo, ĕre, si, sum, 3 *tr.* [*dis*: *spargo*, to scatter], to scatter in different directions, disperse, distribute.

dispōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, 3 *tr.* [*dis*; *pono*, to place], to place here and there, to arrange, station, put in order.

distrĭbŭo, ĕre, ŭi, ūtum, 3 *tr.* [*dis*; *tribuo*, to give], to divide out, distribute.

dĭu, *adv.* [*Abl.* of obsolete *dius*=*dies*, a day], for a long time, a long time; *comp.* **diūtius**; *supl.* **diutissime.**

dīvĭdo, ĕre, vīsi, vīsum, 3 *tr.*, to divide, part asunder; to apportion.

do, dăre, dĕdi, dătum, 1 *tr.* [akin to root δω of δί-δω-μι, to give], to give, give up; to grant, present, furnish, bestow.

dŏcĕo, ēre, ŭi, tum, 3 *tr.* [akin to *dico*, to say], to instruct, teach, inform, show.

dŏlor, ōris, *m.* [*doleo*, to be in pain], pain, grief, vexation, mortification.

dŏmestĭcus, a, um, *adj.* [*domus*, a house], domestic, familiar, civil.

Dŏmĭtĭus, i, *m.* [*domus*, a house], Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus, a Roman consul, the colleague of Appius Claudius, B.C. 54.

dŏmus, ūs and **i**, *f.*, a dwelling, house, abode

dŭcenti, ae, a, *num. adj. plur.* [*duo*, two; *centum*, a hundred], two hundred.

dūco, ĕre, duxi, ductum, 3 *tr.*, to lead, conduct; to consider, think.

dum, *conj.* [akin to *diu*], while, whilst, until, as long as,

Dumnŏrix, īgis, *m.*, Dumnorix, an Aeduan, the brother of Divitiacus. V. 6, 7.
dŭo, ae, o, *num. adj.* [akin to Gr. δύο, two], two.
dŭŏdĕcim, *num. adj. plur.* [*duo; decem*, ten], twelve.
dŭŏdēni, ae, a, *num. adj. plur.* [*duo; deni*, ten each], twelve each.
dŭplico, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*duplex; icis*, double], to double.
Dūrus, i, *m.* [*durus*, hard], Quintus Laberius Durus, a Roman tribune of the soldiers killed shortly after Caesar's landing in Britain. V. 15.
dux, dŭcis, *m.* [*duco*, to lead], a leader, general, chief.

E

ē or **ex,** *prep. with Abl.* See **ex.**
ēdūco, ĕre, duxi, ductum, 3 *tr.* [*e*=out; *duco*, to lead], to lead out or forth; to draw out
effĭcio, ĕre, fēci, fectum, 3 *tr.* [*ex; facio*, to make], to make out; to bring to pass, accomplish, cause.
effŭgio, ĕre, fūgi, fŭgitum, 3 *intr.* [*ex; fugio*, to flee], to flee out or away; to escape.
effundo, ĕre, fūdi, fūsum, 3 *tr.* [*ex; fundo*, to pour], to pour forth, spread.
ĕgo, *pron.* [akin to Gr. ἐγώ, I], I.
ēgrĕdior i, essus, sum, 3 *dep.* [*e; gradior*, to step], to march or go from; to land, disembark.
ēgrĕgie, *adv.* [*egregius*, excellent], excellently, remarkably, well, admirably.
ēgrĕgius, a, um, *adj.* [*e; grex*, a flock], excellent, distinguished, eminent, famous.
ēgressus, ūs, *m.* [*egredior*, to go out], a landing-place.
ējĭcio, ĕre, jēci, jectum, 3 *tr.* [*e; jacio*, to cast], to cast out, eject; **ejicere se,** to sally or rush out.
ēmitto, ĕre, misi, missum, 3 *tr.* [*e; mitto*, to send], to send out or forth.
ĕnĭm, *conj.*, for; in fact, truly, indeed.
ĕo, īre, īvi, ĭtum, *intr. irr.* [prob. akin to Gr. εἶμι, to go], to go.
ĕo, *adv.* [prob. for *eom*=*eum*], to that place, thither, there; to such a degree, for this reason, on the following account; therefore.
ĕquĕs, ĭtis, *m.* [*equus*, a horse], a horseman; *pl.* cavalry.
ĕquester, tris, tre, *adj.* [*equus*, a horse], equestrian, pertaining to a horse or the cavalry.
ĕquĭtātus, ūs, *m.* [*equus*, a horse], cavalry, a body of horsemen.

ĕquus, ī, *m.* [akin to Gr. ἴκκος=ἵππος, a horse], a horse.
ēripio, ĕre, ŭi, reptum, 3 *tr.* [*e; rapio*, to snatch], to snatch or tear away.
ēruptio, ōnis, *f.* [*erumpo*, to break forth], a breaking forth; a sortie, sally.
esse. See **sum.**
essĕdārius, i, *m.* [*esseda*, a car], a chariot-warrior.
essĕda, ae, *f.* or **essĕdum, i,** *n.*, a war car or chariot used by the Britons.
ĕt, and, also, even; *et* - - - *et*, both - - - and; not only - - - but also.
ĕtiam, *conj.* [*et; jam*], and, also, furthermore, likewise, besides, even.
etsi, *conj.* [*et; si*], even if, although.
ēvĕnio, īre, vēni, ventum [*e; venio*, to come out, to result, happen.
ēventus, ūs, *m.* [*evenio*, to result], occurrence, event.
ēvŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*e; voco*, to call], to call out or forth; to summon.
ex or **ē,** *i.e.* **e** only before consonants; **ex** before vowels and consonants. *prep.* with *Abl.*, out of, away from; from; in conformity with; according to; on account of, during.
ex-ardesco, ĕre, arsi, arsum, 3 *intr.* [*ex; ardesco*, to burn], to blaze or burst forth; to be violently excited.
excēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, 3 *intr.* [*ex; cedo*, to go], to go out or away, depart, withdraw, retire.
excĭpio, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, 3 *tr.* [*ex; capio*, to take], to take out or from; to collect, gather.
exclūdo, ĕre, clūsi, clūsum, 3 *tr.* [*ex; claudo*, to shut], to shut out, exclude, prevent, hinder.
excūso, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*ex; causa*, a charge], to release from a charge, to excuse, allege in excuse.
exercĭtātio, ōnis, *f.* [*exercito*, to practise], practice, exercise, rise.
exercĭtus, ūs, *m.* [*exerceo*, to exercise], an army, infantry.
exĭguĭtās, ātis, *f.* [*exiguus*, small], smallness, small size, poverty.
exĭgŭus, a, um, *adj.* [*exigo*, to drive out], small, little, slight.
existĭmo, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*ex; aestimo*, to think], to judge, think, suppose, consider.
expĕdio, īre, īvi or **ii, ītum,** 4 *tr.* [*ex; pes*, a foot], to extricate, loose, disengage.
expĕdītio, ōnis, *f.* [*expedio*, to free], an excursion, expedition.
expĕdītus, a, um (1) *part.* from *expedio;* (2) *adj.*, free, unencumbered; ready, easy; *comp.* **expĕdītior**; *supl.* **expĕdītissĭmus.**

expello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum, 3 *tr.* [*ex; pello*, to drive], to drive out or away; to expel, eject, remove.
expōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, 3 *tr.* [*ex; pono*, to place], to put or set out, disembark, draw up, marshal.
expecto, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.*, to expect, await.
exsto, āre, stĭti, 1 *intr.* [*ex; sto*, to stand], to stand out or forth, or above.
exter or **extĕrus, a, um** [rare in singular], outside, foreign; *comp.* **extĕrior**; *supl.* **extrēmus** or **extĭmus**, last, outermost, extreme.
extrēmi, ōrum, *m. plu.*, the last, the rear.

F

făber, bri, *m.* [for *fac-ber*, fr. *facio*, to make], an artificer, artisan, mechanic, smith.
făcĭle. *adv.* [*facilis*, easy], easily, with ease; *comp.* **făcĭlĭus**; *supl.* **făcĭllĭme.**
făcĭlis, e, *adj.* [*facio*, to do], easy, ready, courteous; *comp.* **făcĭlĭor**; *supl.* **făcĭllĭmus,**
făcĭo, ĕre, fēci, factum, 3 *tr.*, to make, do, cause, render, afford, give; *pass.* **fīo, fĭĕri, factus sum,** to be, be made.
factum, i, *n.* [*facio*, to do], a deed, action.
făcultās, ātis, *f.* [*facilis*, easy], power, means, opportunity.
fāgus, i, *f.* [Gr. φηγος], a beech tree.
fămĭlĭārĭtās, ātis, *f.* [*familiaris*, intimate], intimacy, intimate friendship.
fas, *n. indecl.* [*fari*, to speak], the Divine will, right.
fēlīcĭter, *adv.* [*felix*, happy], happily, prosperously.
fĕre, *adv.* [*fero*], nearly, almost, about, for the most part.
fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *tr. irr.* [akin to Gr. φέρω, to bear], to bear, carry, flow, allow, demand, advance; with *se*, to move one's self, hasten.
ferrĕus, a, um, *adj.* [*ferrum*, iron], belonging to or made of iron.
ferrum, i, *n.*, iron, iron implement, sword.
fĕrus, a, um [akin to Gr. φήρ=θήρ, a wild animal], wild, fierce, savage.
fĭdēlis, e, *adj.* [*fides*, faith], faithful, trusty.
fĭdes, ĕi, *f.* [*fido*, to trust], faith, confidence, protection, oath.
fĭgūra, ae, *f.* [*fingo*, to fashion], form, shape, figure.
fīlĭus, i, *m.*, a son.
fīnis, is, *m.* [prob. fr. *findo*, to divide], boundary, territory, end, conclusion.

fīnĭtĭmus, a, um, *adj.* [*finis*, a boundary], border, nigh upon, neighboring; **fīnĭtĭmi, ōrum,** *m.*, neighbors.
fīo, fĭĕri, factus sum, *pass. irr.*—(see **facio**)—to become, be made; to come to pass, happen.
firmus, a, um, *adj.* [prob. akin to *fero*, to bear].
fīrmĭter, *adv.* [*firmus*, firm], firmly, with firmness.
fīrmus, a, um, *adj.* [prob. akin to *fero*, to bear], firm, strong, steadfast, durable, lasting; *comp.* **firmĭor**; *supl.* **firmissĭmus.**
flecto, ere, xi, xum, 3 *tr.* [akin to Gr. πλέκω, to twist], to bend, turn, direct, guide.
flo, flāre, flāvi, flātum, 1 *tr.*, to blow.
fluctus, ūs, *m.* [*fluo*, to flow], a wave, billow, flood.
flūmen, ĭnis, *n.* [*fluo*, to flow], a river, stream.
forma, ae, *f.* [*fero*, to bear], the form, shape, pattern.
fortis, e, *adj.* [*fero*, to endure], brave, bold, courageous; *comp.* **fortĭor**; *supl.* **fortissimus.**
fortūna, ae, *f.* [*fors*, chance], chance, fortune.
fortūnae [*plur.*], property, possessions, &c.
fossa, ae, *f.* [*fodio*, to dig], a trench, ditch, fosse.
frango, ĕre, frēgi, fractum, 3 *tr.* [akin to Gr. ῥήγνυμι, to break], to break, shatter, wreck, dash to pieces.
frāter, tris, *m.*, a brother.
frĕquens, tis, *adj.*, repeated, in great numbers, numerous, crowded.
frīgus, ŏris, *n.* [akin to Gr. ῥῖγος], cold, frost, cold weather.
frūmentārĭus, a, um, *adj.* [*frumentum*, corn], of or belonging to corn.
frūmentor, āri, ātus sum, 1 *dep.*, to forage, procure corn; *supine*, **frumentatum.**
frūmentum, i, *n.* [*fruor*, to eat], corn, grain.
frustrā, *adv.* [akin to *fraudo*, to deceive], in vain, without effect, to no purpose.
fŭga, ae, *f.* [*fugio*, to flee], flight.
fŭgĭo, ĕre, fūgi, fŭgĭtum, 3 *tr.* and *intr.* [akin to Gr. φεύγω, to flee], to flee, escape, avoid.
funda, ae, *f.* [Gr. σφενδόνη], a sling.
fūnis, is, *m.*, a cord, rope, cable.

G

Gallī, orum, *m.*, the Gauls. See note.
Gallia, ae, *f.*, Gaul, the country of the Gauls. See **note.**
Gallus, i, *m.*, a Gaul, one of the Gauls.
gallēna, ae, *f.* [*gallus*, a cock], a hen.

gĕnus, ĕris, *n.* [akin to Gr. γένος], race, stock, family: a kind, manner, style.
Germāni, ōrum, *m.*, the Germans.
Germānia, ae, *f.*, Germany, the country of the Germans.
gĕro, ĕre, gessi, gestum, 3 *tr.*, to bear, carry, carry on, to manage, perform, administer.
grātia, ae, *f.* [*gratus*, pleasing], favor, kindness, influence.
grāvis, e, *adj.* [akin to Gr. βαρύς, heavy], heavy, weighty, violent, difficult; *comp.* **grăvior**; *supl.* **gravissĭmus.**
grăvitās, ātis, *f.* [*gravis*, heavy], heaviness, weight, importance, power.
grăviter, *adv.*, heavily, bitterly, deeply; *comp.* **grăvius**; *supl.* **grăvissĭme.**
gŭbernātor, ōris, *m.* [*guberno*, to steer], a pilot, governor.
gustō, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*gustus*, a tasting], to taste.

H

hăbĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, 2 *tr.*, to have, possess, hold, keep; to consider, esteem, know, make.
haud, *adv.*, not; not at all.
hībernus, a, um, *adj.* [*hiems*, winter], pertaining to the winter; *hiberna* (*i.e.* castra), winter quarters.
hic, haec, hoc, *dem. pro.* [Gen. *hujus*, Dat. *huic*], this, it, the latter, such; Abl. *hoc*, on this account, therefore, with comparatives *the.*
hīc, *adv.* [*hic*, this], here, in this place.
hĭĕmō, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *intr.* [*hiems*, winter], to winter, pass the winter.
hiems, hĭĕmis, *f.* [akin to Gr. χειμών, winter], winter.
Hispānia, ae, *f.*, Spain, the country of the Hispani.
hŏmo, ĭnis, *m.* and *f.*, a man, a human being, a person.
hōra, ae, *f.* [Gr. ὥρα], an hour.
horrĭdus, a, um, *adj.* [*horreo*], rough, wild, savage, horrible; *comp.* **horridior.**
hortor, āri, ātus sum, 1 *dep.* [possibly akin to ὄρνυμι, to arouse], to incite, encourage, strongly urge, advise.
hospes, ĭtis, *m.* and *f.*, a stranger, guest, friend.
hospĭtium, i, *n.* [*hospes*, a guest], friendship, hospitality.
hostis, is, *m.* and *f.*, an enemy, a public enemy; **inimīcus,** a personal or private enemy.
hūc, *adv.* [for *hoc* adverbial Acc., of *hic*], hither, to this place.
hūmānus, a, um, *adj.* [*homo*, a man], human, civilized, refined, polished; *comp.* **hūmānior**; *supl.* **hūmānissĭmus.**

hŭmĭlis, e, *adj.* [*humus*, the ground], low, humble, poor, insignificant.
hŭmĭlĭtās, ātis, *f.* [*humilis*, low], lowness; insignificance.

I

ĭbi, *adv.* [*is*, that], there, in that place.
idcirco, *adv.* [*id; circa*, about], therefore, on that account, for this reason.
īdem, eadem, ĭdem, *dem. pro.* [*is; dem*], the same.
ĭdōnĕus, a, um, *adj.*, fit, suitable, trustworthy.
ignis, is, *m.*, fire.
ignōbĭlis, e, *adj.* [*in-not; nobilis*, noble], not noble, ignoble, base, low-born.
ignosco, ĕre, nōvi, nōtum, 3 *tr.* and *intr.* [*in-not; nosco*, to know], to pardon, forgive.
ignōtus, a, um, *adj.* [*ignosco*], not known, unknown.
ille, illa, illud, *Dem. pro.*, Gen. **illīus,** Dat. **illi** [for *is-le*], that, that one, this one, he, she, it.
illo, *adv.* [poss. adverbial Acc. *illom=illum*, fr. *ille*], thither, to that place; **eodem illo,** to that same end, or that very purpose.
Illyrĭcum, i, *n.*, Illyricum, the modern Dalmatia.
Imanŭentĭus i, *m.*, Imanuentius, king of the Trinobantes; was killed by Cassivelaunus.
immitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, 3 *tr.* [*in; mitto*, to send], to send against.
impĕdīmentum, i, *n.* [*impedio*, to hinder], hindrance, impediment; **impĕdīmenta,** baggage.
impĕdĭo, ire, īvi or **ii, ītum,** 4 *tr.* [*in; pes*, the foot], to hinder, prevent, impede.
impĕdītus, a, um. *part.* and *adj.*, entangled, obstructed; presenting difficulties.
impello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum, 3 *tr.* [*in; pello*, to drive], to impel, urge; push forward.
impĕrātor, ōris, *m.* [*impero*, to command], a commander, general, leader.
imperītus, a, um, *adj.* [*in-not; peritus*, skilful], not skilful, inexperienced, ignorant, unacquainted.
impĕrĭum, i, *n.* [*impero*, to command], command, dominion, empire.
impĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*in; paro*, to put], to command, order, enjoin, bid.
impĕtro, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*in; patro*, to bring to pass], to get, attain.
impĕtus, ūs, *m.* [*impeto*, to attack], attack, assault, onset, violence, fury.

implōro, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*in; ploro*], to implore with tears, beseech, implore earnestly.

importo, āre, āvi, ātum [for *in; porto,* to carry into], to carry or bring in, to import.

imprŏvīsus, a, um, *adj.* [*in; provisus,* foreseen], unexpected; *de improviso,* unexpectedly, suddenly.

imprūdens, tis, *adj.* [*in; prudens,* prudent], imprudent, inadvertent; inexperienced, unwary.

imprūdentĭa, ae, *f.* [*imprudens,* imprudent], imprudence, indiscretion.

ĭn, *prep.* with *Acc.* and *Abl.*—(1) with *Acc.* in answer to the question whither? in, into, towards; (2) with *Abl.* in answer to the question where? in, on, among; to, till, during, against; in case of.

ĭn, *insep. particle* [akin to Gr. *α* and English *un*], not.

ĭnānis, e, *adj.*, empty.

incendĭum, i, *n.* [*incendo,* to burn], a burning, conflagration.

incendo, ĕre, di, sum, 3 *tr.* [*in; candeo,* to glow], to put or set on fire; to kindle.

incertus, a, um, *adj.* [*in-not; certus,* sure], not certain, unreliable.

incĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*in; cito,* to move rapidly], to set in motion; to propel forward rapidly.

incŏlo, ĕre, cŏlŭi, cultum, 3 *tr.* and *intr.* [*in; colo,* to dwell], to inhabit, to dwell in.

incŏlŭmis, e, *adj.* [*in; columis,* safe], safe, quite safe, uninjured.

incursĭo, ōnis, *f.* [*incurro,* to run into], an inroad, raid, assault.

inde, *adv.* [*is;* and suffix *de*], thence, from that place or quarter, thereupon

Indŭtĭŏmărus (or **Indŭtĭŏmārus**), **i,** *m.*, Indutiomarus, a chief among the Treviri.

ĭnĕo, īre, īvi or **ĭi, ĭtum,** *tr. irreg.* [*in; eo,* to go], to enter upon, begin, undertake, commence; to form, adopt.

infĕro, ferre, tŭli, illātum, *tr. irr.* [*in; fero,* to bear], to bring into; to make, wage; to advance.

infĕrus, a, um, *adj.*, low; *comp.* **inferior**; *supl.* **infĭmus** or **īmus.**

infĭcĭo, ĕre, fēci, fectum, 3 *tr.* [*in,* in; *facio,* to make], to make in, to dip, dye, stain.

infīnītus, a, um, *adj.* [*in; finio,* to limit], countless, boundless

infirmus, a, um, *adj.* [*in,* not; *firmus,* strong], not strong, weak, feeble; *comp.* **infirmĭor**; *supl.* **infirmissĭmus.**

infrā, *adv.* [*inferus,* low], below.

ingens, gentis, *adj.* [*in,* not; *gens,* a kind], vast, enormous, immense, huge.

ingrĕdior, i, gressus sum, 3 *dep.* [*in*, into; *gradior*, to step], to step into, enter, enter upon, begin, attack.
ĭnĭmīcus, a, um, *adj.* [*in*, not; *amicus*, friendly], unfriendly, hostile, inimical.
ĭnĭtĭum, i, *n.* [*ineo*, to go into], beginning, commencement.
injĭcĭo, ĕre, jēci, jectum, 3 *tr.* [*in*; *jacio*, to cast], to cast, or throw upon, infuse into.
injūrĭa, ae, *f.* [*injurius*, injurious], injury, injustice, wrong, harm, insult.
inŏpĭa, ae, *f.* [*inops*, without means], want, scarcity, destitution.
inscĭens, entis, *adj.* [*in*, not; *sciens*, knowing], not knowing, unaware, ignorant.
insĕquor, i, sĕquūtus sum, 3 *dep.* [in, after, or upon: *sequor*, to follow], to follow after or upon; to press upon.
insĭdiae, ārum, *f.* [*in*; *sedeo*, to sit], an ambush, ambuscade.
insĭnŭo, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*in*: *sinuo*, to wind], to make a way into, to get into, or among.
insisto, ĕre, stĭti, 3 *intr.* [*in*; *sisto*, to stand], to stand, take one's stand; to get a footing.
instăbĭlis, e, *adj.* [*in*, not; *stabilis*, that stands firm], unsteady, changeable.
instĭtŭo, ĕre, ŭi, ūtum, 3 *tr.* [*in*: *statuo*, to set], to put or place into, draw up; to build, erect; to fix upon.
instĭtūtum, i, *n.* [*instituo*, to institute], institution, law, custom.
insto, āre, stĭti, stātum, 1 *intr.* [*in*, upon; *stare*, to stand], to press upon, assail vigorously.
instrūmentum, i, *n.* [*instruo*, to build], tool, utensil, stores, supplies, material of war.
instrŭo, ĕre, xi, ctum, 3 *tr.* [*in*; *struo*, to build], to build; to draw up, form, arrange.
insŭēfactus, a, um, *adj.* [*insuesco*, to be wont; *facio*, to make], accustomed, habituated, trained.
insŭētus, a, um, *adj.* [*in*, not; *suetus*, accustomed], not accustomed, unused to.
insŭla, ae, *f.* [for *in-sula* fr. *in*; *salum*, the sea], an island.
intĕger, gra, grum, *adj.* [*in*: *tango*, to touch], untouched, whole, fresh, vigorous.
intellĭgo, ĕre, lexi, lectum, 3 *tr.* [*inter*; *lego*, to choose], to know, understand, comprehend, perceive, observe.
inter, *prep.* with *Acc.*, between, among; during, in the course of.
intercēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, 3 *intr.* [*inter*; *cedo*, to go], to intervene; to be or exist, between.
interclūdo, ĕre, clūsi, clūsum, 3 *tr.* [*inter*; *claudo*, to shut], to cut off, separate; to hinder, debar.

interdīco, ĕre, dixi, dictum, 3 *tr.* [*inter; dico,* to speak], to forbid, prohibit, interdict.
interdiū, *adv.* [*inter;* obsol, *dius=dies,* a day], by day, in the daytime, during the day.
intĕrĕā, *adv.* [*inter; eam,* Acc. sing. of *is*], meanwhile, in the meantime.
intĕrĕo, īre, īvi or **ĭi, ĭtum,** *int. irr.* [*in; eo,* to go], to perish.
interfĭcĭo, ĕre, fēci, fectum, 3 *tr.* [*inter; facio,* to make], to destroy, kill, slay.
intĕrim, *adv.* [*inter; im=cum,* Acc. sing. of *is*], in the meantime, meanwhile.
intĕrĭor, ĭus, *adj. comp.* [fr. obsol. *interus,* within], inner, interior; *supl.* **intĭmus.**
intermitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, 3 *tr.* [*inter,* a part; *mitto,* to send], to leave off, discontinue, interrupt, intervene, elapse.
interpōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, 3 *tr.* [*inter; pono,* to put], to place between, interpose, pledge; to make, excite.
interpres, ĕtis, *m.* and *f.* [*inter; praes,* a surety], an interpreter, mediator.
intersum, esse, fŭi, *intr. irr.* [*inter; sum,* to be], to be present, take part in; to be of advantage.
intervallum, i, *n.* [*inter; vallum,* a mound], a space between two mounds; an interval, space.
intrā, *prep.* with *Acc.*, within, in, during.
intrŏĭtus, *m.* [*introeo,* to go within], an entrance, approach.
intus, *adv.*, within, or in the inside.
ĭnūsĭtātus, a, um, *adj.* [*in,* not; *usitatus,* usual], unusual, uncommon, strange, extraordinary; *comp.* **ĭnūsĭtātĭor.**
inūtĭlis, e, *adj.* [*in; utilis,* useful] useless, unprofitable.
invĭcem, *adv.* [*in; vicis,* a turn], in turn, one after the other, mutually.
ipse, a, um, *pron. dem.* [*is;* suffix *pse*], himself, herself, identical, self, very.
irrumpo, ĕre, rūpi, ruptum, 3 *tr.* [*in; rumpo,* to break], to break or burst into; to force one's way into.
is, ĕa, id, *pron. dem.*, this, that, he, she, it, such; *eo quod,* on this account, because; *eo* with *comp.*, the.
ĭtă, *adv.*, thus, in this way, to such degree; **ĭtă ut,** just as.
Ĭtălĭa, ae, *f.* Italy, including Gallia Cisalpina.
ĭtăque, *conj.* [*ita,* thus; *que,* and), and so, therefore, accordingly, hence.
ĭtem, *adv.* [*is,* this], in like manner, likewise, also.
ĭter, ĭtĭnĕris, *n.* [*eo,* to go], a journey, march, route; a road, way.
ĭtĕrum, *adv.*, again, a second time.
Itĭus (i, m), *Portus,* port Itius. See note.

J

jăcĭo, ĕre, jēci, jactum, 3 *tr.*, to throw, fling, hurl.
jăcŭlum, i, *n.* [*jacio*, to throw], a javelin, dart, missile.
jam, *adv.* [prob. contr. for *eam*, this], now, already, indeed, truly; *jam ante*, already, before; *jam* - - - *jam*, at one time - - - at another time; now - - - then.
jŭbĕo, ēre, jussi, jussum, to command, order, direct, give orders.
jūdĭcĭum, i, *n.* [*judex*, a judge], a trial, decree; decision, opinion, judgment.
jūdĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*jus*, law; *dico*, to point out], to pronounce a sentence; to judge, adjudge, deem, consider.
jŭgum, i, *n.* [*jungo*, to join], a yoke, a height, mount.
jūmentum, i, *n.* [for *jugmentum*, fr. *jungo*, to join], a draught animal. See note.
junctūra, ae, *f.* [for *jungtura*, fr. *jungo*, to join], a joining.
jungo, ĕre, junxi, junctum, 3 *tr.* [akin to Gr. ζεύγνυμι, to join], to join, unite.
jūs, jūris, *n.* right, law, justice.
jus-jurandum, *Gent.* **jūrĭs-jūrandi,** *n.* [*jus*; *juro*, to swear], an oath.
justĭtĭa, ae, *f.* [*justus*, just], justice, uprightness, clemency.
justus, a, um, *adj.* [*jus*, right], just, right, fair.

L

Lăbĭēnus, i, *m.*, Labienus, one of Caesar's ablest lieutenants.
lăbor, ōris, *m.* [akin to Gr. λαβ, root of λαμβάνω, to take], labor, toil, exertion.
lābor, lābi, lapsus sum, 3 *dep.*, to fall, slip, mistake, deceive.
lăbōro, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*labor*, labor], to labor, toil, struggle, to be hard pressed; to be in difficulty.
labrum, i, *n.*, a lip.
lac, lactis, *n.* [akin to Gr. γάλα, γάλακτος], milk.
lacesso, ĕre, īvi or **ĭi, ītum,** 3 *tr.* [*lacio*, to entice], to excite, provoke; to attack, assail.
lăpis, ĭdis, *m.*, a stone.
lāte, *adv* [*latus*, wide], widely, far and wide; *comp.* **lātĭus**; *supl.* **latissĭme.**
lātus, a, um, *adj.* [akin to Gr. πλατύς], wide, broad.
lătus, ĕris, *n.* [prob. akin to *latus*, wide], side, flank, wing.

laus, laudis, *f.* [akin to Gr. κλύω], praise.
lēgātĭo, ōnis, *f.* [*lego* (*are*), to depute], embassy, legation, ambassadors.
lēgātus, i, *m.* [*lego; are*], an ambassador; a lieutenant.
lĕgĭo, ōnis, *f.* [*lego*, to levy], a legion; a body of Roman troops, consisting of ten cohorts of infantry (*i.e.*, 3,000) and three hundred cavalry.
lĕgĭōnārĭus a, um, *adj.* [*legio*, a legion], legionary, belonging to a legion.
lēnis, e, *adj.*, smooth, gentle, mild.
lēnĭter, *adv.* [*lenis*, gentle] gently, mildly, gradually; *comp.* **lēnĭus,** less violently; *supl.* **lēnis-sĭme.**
lĕpus, ŏris, *m.*, a hare.
lĕvis, e [akin to Gr. ἐλαχύς], light, swift, rapid; fickle, light-minded; *comp.* **lĕvior**; *supl.* **lĕvissĭmus.**
lĕvo, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*levis*, light], to make light, to take away; to ease, relieve.
lex, lēgis, *f.* [*lego*, to read], law, ordinance, decree.
lībĕre, *adv.* [*liber*], freely, unreservedly, boldly; *comp.* **lībĕrĭus**; *supl.* **lībĕrrĭme.**
lībĕri, ōrum, *m.*, children.
lībĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*liber*, free], to make free, liberate, release, extricate.
lībertas, ātis, *f.* [*liber*], liberty, freedom.
lĭcet, ēre, lĭcŭit, lĭcĭtum est, it is allowable, lawful, permitted; one may or can.
lis, lītĭs, *f.*, strife, dispute; a law suit, action at law.
lĭtĕra, ae, *f.* [*lino*, to smear], a letter of the alphabet; **lĭterae, arum,** a letter, epistle, dispatches.
lītus, ŏris, *n.* [prob. fr. *lino*, to overspread], the beach, seashore, strand.
lŏcus, i, *m.* [pl. *loci m.* and *loca n.*], a place, spot, position; room, place, occasion.
longe, *adv.* [*longus*, long], at a distance, far off, far away, widely, greatly, further, too far; *comp.* **longĭus**: *supl.* **longissĭme.**
longinquus, a, um, *adj.* [for *long-hinc-vus*, fr. *longus*, far], far distant, remote; long, long continued.
longĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.* [*longus*, long], length.
longus, a, um, *adj.*, long; distant, far off, remote.
lŏquor, i, ūtus sum, *tr. dep.*, to speak, talk.
Lūcĭus, i, *m.* [*lux*, light], Lucius, a Roman praenomen.
Lugotŏrix, ĭgĭs, *m.*, Lugotorix, a chief and noble of the Britons.
lūna, ae, *f.* [for *lucna*, fr. *luceo*, to shine], the moon.
lux, lūcis, *f.* [for *luc-s*, fr. *luceo*, to shine], light, daylight.

M

magnĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.* [*magnus*, great], magnitude, greatness, size.
magnŏpere, *adv.* [*magno; opere*] greatly, very much, exceedingly.
magnus, a, um, *adj.* [akin to Gr. μέγας, great], great, large, much, important, powerful; **magni,** *gen. sing.*, of great importance; *comp.* **major**; *supl.* **maximus.**
majōres, um, *m.*, [*major*], ancestors.
mandātum, i, *n.* [*mando*, to enjoin], a charge, order, command.
mando, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*manus*, the hand; *do*, to put], to enjoin, order, commission, betake.
Mandubratius, i, *m.*, Mandubratius, a chief of the Trinobantes in Britain.
māne, *adv.*, in the morning, early in the morning.
măneo, ēre, mansi, mansum, 2 *intr.* [akin to Gr. μένω], to remain, continue.
mănus, ūs, *f.*, a hand; a band, force, body of men.
măre, is, *n.*, the sea.
măritimus, a, um, *adj.* [*mare*, the sea], of or belonging to the sea, on the sea coast, maritime.
mātĕria, ae, and **mātĕries, ei,** *f.* [*mater*, a producer], wood, timber.
mātūrus, a, um, *adj.*, ripe, mature, early.
maxime, *adv.* [*supl.* of *magis*], very greatly, especially, principally.
mĕditerranĕus, a, um, *adj.* [*medius; terra*, land], midland, inland, remote from the sea.
mĕdius, a, um, *adj.* [akin to Gr. μέσος], in the middle or midst; in the middle of, intervening.
Meldi, orum, *m.*, the Meldi, a people of Gaul.
membrum, i, *n.*, a member, limb.
mĕmŏria, ae, *f.* [*memor*, mindful], memory, recollection, remembrance, time.
Mĕnăpii, ōrum, *m.*, the Menapii, a people in Gallia Belgica, between the Meuse and the Scheldt.
mens, mentis, *f.* [akin to Gr. μένος], the mind.
mensūra, ae, *f.* [*metior*, to measure], a measure, measuring, measurement.
mercātor, ōris, *m.* [*mercor*, to traffic], a trader, merchant.
mĕrĭdiānus, a, um, *adj.* [*meridies*, mid-day], of or belonging to mid-day, noon.
mĕrĭdies, ēi, *m.* [for *medi; dies*, fr. *medius; dies*, a day], mid-day, noon; the south.
mĕrĭtum, i, *n.*, desert, merit.

mĕto, ĕre, messŭi, messum, 3 *tr.* [prob. akin to Gr. $\dot{\alpha}$-$\mu\alpha$-ω], to measure, reap.
mĕtus, ūs, *m.*, fear, dread.
mĕus, a, um, *adj. pron.* [*ego; mei*], my, mine; of or belonging to me.
mīles, ĭtis, *m.*, a soldier, private; infantry.
mīlĭtāris, e, *adj.* [*miles*], of or belonging to a soldier; military.
mille, *num. adj. indecl.*, a thousand; *subst.* **millĭa, ĭum.** See note.
mĭnĭme, *supl. adv.* of *parum*, least, least of all; by no means.
mĭnor, us, *adj. comp.* of *parvus*, smaller, less.
mĭnŭo, ĕre, ŭi, ūtum, 3 *tr.* [*minus*, less], to make less; to diminish, lessen.
mĭnus, *adv. comp.* of *parvum*, less, in a less or smaller degree; not at all, by no means.
mitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, 3 *tr.*, to send, dispatch, cast, discharge; to let go, release.
mōbĭlis, e, *adj.* [for *mov-bilis*, fr. *moveo*, to move], changeable, fickle.
mōbĭlĭtas, ātis, *f.* [*mobilis*], quickness, rapidity, speed.
mŏdĕror, āri, ātus sum, 1 *dep.* [*modus*, bound], to manage, regulate, govern, direct.
mŏdo, *adv.*, only, merely.
mŏdus, i, *m.* [akin to Gr. $\mu\acute{\epsilon}\tau\rho o\nu$, a measure], a manner, method, way, mode, kind.
mollis, e, *adj.* [for *mobilis*], gentle, easy, soft.
Mŏna, ae, *f.*, Mona, an island, probably the Isle of Man.
mŏnĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, 2 *tr.*, to admonish, advise, warn; to instruct, counsel.
mons, montis, *m.* [for *min-s*, fr. *mineo*, to project], a mountain, mount.
mŏra, ae, *f.*, delay.
Mŏrĭni, ōrum, *m.*, the Morini, a people of Gallia Belgica; the country of the Morini.
mŏror, āri, ātus sum, 1 *dep.* [*mora*, delay], to delay, to linger, tarry.
mors, mortis, *f.* [*morior*, to die], death.
mos, mōris, *f.*, custom, practice, character.
mōtus, ūs, *m.* [for *mov-tus*, fr. *moveo*, to move], a motion, movement, rising, rebellion.
mŏvĕo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, 2 *tr.*, to move, excite, set in motion.
mŭlĭer, ĕris, *f.*, a woman.
multĭtūdo, ĭnis, *f.* [*multus*], crowd, multitude; a great number.
multum, *adv.* [*multus*], often, frequently.

multus, a, um, *adj.*, much, many, numerous; *comp.* **plus;** *supl.* **plurĭmus.** For idioms, see notes.
mūnĭo, īre, īvi, ītum, 4 *tr.* [*moenia*], to fortify, protect, defend by a wall.
mūnītĭo, ōnis, *f.* [*munio*], a fortifying, a raising of fortification.
mūnītus, a, um, *part. adj.*, fortified, protected; *supl.* **mūnītissĭmus.**
mūrus, i, *m.*, a wall.

N

nactus, a, um, *part.* See **nanciscor.**
nam, *conj.*, for.
namque, *conj.* [*nam; que*], for, for indeed.
nanciscor, i, nactus sum, 3 *dep.*, to gain, get, acquire, meet with.
nascor, i, nātus sum, 3 *dep.*, to be born, or sprung from; to be found.
nātĭo, ōnis, *f.* [*nascor*], a race of people, nation, people.
nātū, *m.*, only in the Abl. [*nascor*], birth.
nātūra, ae, *f.* [*nascor*], nature, disposition; natural disposition.
nātus, a, um, *perf. part.* of *nascor.*
nauta, ae, *m.* [Gr. ναύτης], a sailor, seaman.
nāvālis, e, *adj.* [*navis*, a ship], of or belonging to ships, naval.
nāvĭgātĭo, ōnis, *f.* [*navigo*, to sail], sailing, navigation, voyage by sea.
nāvĭgĭum, i, *n.* [*navigo*], a vessel, ship, bark.
nāvis, is, *f.* [akin to Gr. ναῦς, a ship].
nāvĭgo, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *intr.* [*navis; ago*, to move], to navigate, sail, go by ship.
nāvis, is, *f.* [akin to Gr. ναῦς], a ship, vessel. See notes.
nē, *conj.*, that not, lest [afterwards denoting fear] that; *adv.*, not; *ne-quidem*, not - - - even.
nĕ, *inter. particle, enclitic*, whether; *ne - - - ne*, whether - - - or.
nec, *conj.* See *neque.*
nĕcessārĭo, *adv.* [*necessarius*], of necessity, unavoidably, necessarily.
neglĭgo, ĕre, lexi, lectum, 3 *tr.* [*nec; lego*, to collect], not to heed, neglect, disregard.
nĕgōtium, i, *n.* [*nec; otium*, ease], business, occupation, affair, difficulty, trouble, labor.
nēmo, ĭnis, *m.* and *f.* [contr. for *ne-homo*, fr. *ne*, not; *homo*, a man], no one, nobody.

nē-quā-quam, *adv.* [*ne*, not; *qua quam*, adverbial *Abl.* of *quis quam*, any], by no means, not at all.
nĕque (nĕc), *conj.* [*ne*, not; *que*, and], and not, nor; **nĕque - - - nĕque,** neither - - - nor.
Nervĭi ōrum, *m.*, the Nervii, a people of Gaul.
nēve (*neu*), *conj.* [*ne*, not; *ve*, or], and not, nor.
nĭhĭl (nīl), *n. indecl.* [contr. for *nihilum*, fr. *ne*, not; *hilum*, a thread], nothing, not, in no respect, not at all.
nĭhĭlo, [*Abl.* of *nihilum*], in no respect; *nihilo minus*, by no means the less, nevertheless; *nihilo secius*, none the less.
nĭsĭ, *conj.* [*ne*, not; *si*, if], unless, except.
nōbĭlĭs, e, *adj.* [for *noscibilis*, fr. *nosco*, to know], known, distinguished, noble; *comp.* **nōbĭlĭor**; *supl.* **nōbĭlissĭmus, nōbĭles, ĭum,** *m.*, nobles, noblemen.
nōbĭlĭtās, ātis, *f.* [*nobilis*], the nobility, nobles.
nobiscum=*cum nobis.*
nŏcēo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, 2 *tr.* and *intr.*, to injure, hurt, harm.
noctū [*Abl.* of obsolete *noctus*=*nox*], by night, in the night.
nocturnus, a, um, *adj.* [*nox*, night], by night, nightly, in the night.
nōlo, nolle, nōlŭi - - - *irr.* H. 293 [contr. for *non*, not; *volo*, to wish], to be unwilling, not to wish, refuse, object.
nōmen, ĭnis, *n.* [*nosco*, to know], a name, title.
nōmĭnātim, *adv.* [*nomino*, to name], by name, expressly.
nōn, *adv.*, not, no.
nondum, *adv.* [*non*; *dum*, yet], not yet.
non-nullus, a, um, *adj.* [*non*; *nullus*], some, a few, several.
nōnus, a, um, *adj.* [for *novenus*, fr. *novem*, nine], ninth.
nos. See **ego.**
noster, tra, trum, *pron. poss.* [*nos*, we], our, our own, ours; **nostri, orum,** *m.* [as a subst.], our men.
nōtus, a, um, *part.* and *adj.* [*nosco*, to know], known, familiar.
nŏvus, a, um, *adj.*, new, strange, fresh, recent; *supl.* **nŏvissĭmus,** newest, latest, last; **agmen nŏvissĭmum,** the rear.
nox, noctis, *f.*, night.
nullus, a, um, *adj.* [for *ne-ullus*, fr. *ne*, not; *ullus*, any], not any, no, none, without any.
nŭmĕrus, ī, *m.* [akin to Gr. νέμω, to distribute], a number; a multitude, crowd.
nummus, i, *m.* [akin to Gr. νοῦμμος=νόμισμα], money.
nunc, *adv.* [akin to Gr. νῦν], now, at this time.
nunquam, *adv.* [*ne*, not; *unquam*, ever], never.
nuntĭo, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*nuntius*], to announce, bring intelligence about.

nuntĭus, i, *m.*, a messenger, courier; a message, news, tidings; orders.
nūper, *adv.* [for *noviper*, fr. *novus*, new], newly, lately, not long ago.
nūtus, ūs, *m.* [*nuo*, to nod), a nod, will, command.

O

ŏb, *prep.* with *Acc.* [akin to Gr. ἐπί], on account of, for, in consideration of.
objĭcĭo, ĕre, jēci, jectum, 3 *tr.* [*ob*; *jacio*, to throw], throw, or place in the way; oppose.
obsĕs, ĭdis, *m.* and *f.* [*ob*; *sedeo*, to sit], a hostage, surety, pledge.
obstĭnātē, *adv.* [*obstinatus*, firm], firmly, inflexibly.
obtempĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*ob*, in accordance with; *tempero*, to regulate one's self], to comply with, conform to, submit to, obey.
obtĭnĕo, ēre, ŭi, tentum, 2 *tr.* [*ob*; *teneo*, to hold], to hold, possess, maintain; to acquire, get possession of.
occāsus, ūs, *m.* [*occido*, to set], a setting or going down; the west.
occīdo, ĕre, cīdi, cīsum [*ob*; *caedo*, to strike], to cast down, kill, slay, slaughter.
occŭpātĭo, ōnis, *f.* [*occupo*], an occupation, employment, business.
occŭpo, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*ob*; *capio*, to take], to take, or lay hold of, seize.
occurro, ĕre, curri and **cŭcurri, cursum,** 3 *intr.* [*ob*; *curro*, to run], to run up; to meet, fall in with, encounter.
occurso, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *intr. intens.* [from *occurro*], to rush violently against; to attack.
ōcĕănus, i, *m.* [Gr. ὠκεανός], the ocean.
octingenti, ae, a, *adj.* [*octo*; *centum*, a hundred], eight hundred.
octo, *num. adj. indecl.* [Gr. ὀκτώ], eight.
octōdĕcim, *num. adj. indecl.* [*octo*; *decim*], eighteen.
octōginta, *num. adj. indecl.*, eighty.
offĭcĭum, i, *n.* [*ob*; *facio*, to do], a service, duty, office.
omnīno, *adv.* [*omnis*, all], altogether, wholly: in all.
omnis, e, *adj.*, all, every, the whole.
ŏnĕrārĭus, a, um, *adj.* [*onus*, a burden], of, or belonging to, a burden. See note.
ŏnĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*onus*], to load, freight.
ŏnus, ĕris, *n.*, a burden, load.

ŏpĕra, ae, *f.* [*operor*, to work], pains, exertion, labor; aid, assistance.
ŏpīnĭo, ōnis, *f.* [*opinor*, to think], opinion, supposition, belief, conjecture.
ŏportet, ēre, ŭit, 2 *impers.*, it is necessary, needful, proper; one must, ought.
oppĭdum, i, *n.*, a town.
opportune, *adv.* [*opportunus*, fit], fitly, seasonably, opportunely.
opportūnus, a, um, *adj.* [*ob; portus*, a harbor], fit, convenient, seasonable.
opprĭmo, ĕre, pressi, pressum, 1 *tr.* [*ob; premo*, to press], overpower, to crush, overwhelm.
oppugno, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*ob; pugno*, to fight], to fight against, attack; besiege, invest.
optĭmus, a, um [*supl.* of *bonus*], best; *comp.* **melior.**
ŏpus, ĕris, *n.*, work, labor, toil; military work, fortification.
ōra, ae, *f.*, the coast, sea-coast.
ōrātor, ōnis, *m.* [*oro*, to speak], a speaker, envoy, ambassador.
orbis, is, *m.*, a circle, ring, orb.
ordo, ĭnis, *m.* [*ordior*, to arrange], an arrangement, order, a line, rank of soldiers.
ŏrĭor, īri, ortus sum, 3 and 4 *dep.*, to rise, take rise, begin, to spring from, be born, descend.
ōro, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*os*, the mouth], to speak, pray, beseech.
ōs, ōris, *n.*, the mouth, face, countenance.
ostendo, ĕre, tendi, tensum, 3 *tr.* [*ob; tendo*, to stretch], to stretch out; to shew, exhibit, disclose; to tell, declare, make known.

P

pābŭlātor, ōris, *m.* [*pabulor*, to forage], a forager.
pābŭlor, āri, ātus sum, 1 *dep.* [*pabulum*, food], to forage.
pācātus, a, um, *part. adj.* [*paco*, to tranquillize], tranquil, undisturbed, in a state of peace; *comp.* **pācātior**; *supl.* **pācātissimus.**
pāgus, i, *m.*, a district, canton.
pălūs, ūdis, *f.* [Gr. πήλος, clay; *udus*, wet, moist], swamp, marsh, morass—(a hybrid word).
pār, păris, *adj.*, equal.
pars, partis, *f.*, a part, piece, portion; a quarter, side direction.
passus, ūs, *m.* [*pando*, to extend], step, pace, equal to five Roman feet.

pătĭor, i, passus sum, 3 *dep.*, to suffer, support, bear, endure; to allow, permit.

paucĭtās, ātis, *f.* [*paucus*, small], a small number, fewness, scarcity.

paucus, a, um, *adj.* small; *pauci*, few, not many.

paulātim, *adv.* [*paulus*, little], little by little, gradually, by degrees.

paulisper, *adv.* [*paulus*], for a short time, for a little while.

paulo, *adv.* [prop. *Abl.* of *paulus*], a little, somewhat.

paulŭlum, *adv.* [*paulus*], a little, very little.

paulum, *adv.* [*paulus*], a little, somewhat.

pĕcus, ŏris, *n.*, cattle, herd.

pĕdes, ĭtis, *m.* [*pes*, a foot], a foot soldier; *pl.* infantry.

pĕdester, is, e, *adj.* [*pes*], foot, that goes on foot.

pĕdĭtātus, ūs, *m.* [*pedes*], foot soldiers, infantry.

pellis, is, *f.* [akin to Gr. πέλλα, a hide], a skin, hide.

pendo, ĕre, pependi and **pendi, pensum,** 3 *tr.*, to weigh, weigh out; to pay.

per, *prep. gov. Acc.*, through, through the midst of, in consequence of; by means or agency of, through.

perăgo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, 3 *tr.* [*per; ago*], to complete, furnish.

percontātĭo, ōnis, *f.* [*percontor*, to enquire], an enquiring, enquiry.

percŭtio, cŭtĕre, cussi, cussum, 3 *tr.* [*per; quatio*, to smite], to smite through, slay, kill; to transfix.

pĕrĕo, īre, ivi or **ii, ĭtum,** *intr. irr.* [*per; eo*, to go], to go through; to perish, lose one's life, die.

pĕrĕquĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *intr.* [*per; equito*, to ride], to ride through; to ride hither and thither.

pĕrexĭgŭus, a, um, [*per*, very; *exiguus*, small], very small.

perfĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *tr. in.* [*per; fero*, to bear], to bear or carry through; to endure, suffer; to report.

perfŭga, ae, *f.* [*perfugio*, to desert], a deserter.

perfŭgium, i, *n.* [*perfugio*, to flee for refuge], a shelter, refuge, asylum.

perīcŭlum, i, *n.* [from obsolete *perior*, to try], a trial, attempt, experiment; risk, danger, peril.

permănĕo, ēre, mansi, mansum, 2 *intr.* [*per; maneo*, to stay], to stay through, or to the end; continue, endure, remain.

permitto, ĕre, mīsi, missum, 3 *tr.* [*per; mitto*, to send], send through; to give up: leave, permit, suffer.

permŏvĕo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, 2 *tr.* [*per; moveo*].

perpaucus, a, um, *adj.* [*per; paucus*, little], very little, very few.

perpĕtŭus, a, um, *adj.* [according to some, akin to Gr. πετάννυμι and pateo; to others, to *peto*], constant; perpetual, continued; *in perpetuum*, for ever.
perspĭcĭo, ere, spexi, spectum, 3 *tr.* [*per; spicio*, to see], to perceive, observe; to ascertain, learn.
perterrĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, 2 *tr.* [*per; terreo*, to frighten], to frighten thoroughly, to terrify greatly.
pertĭnĕo, ēre, ŭi, tentum, 2 *intr.* [*per; teneo*, to hold], to stretch out, extend to; to belong, refer to.
perturbo, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*per; turbo*, to disturb], to throw into confusion or disorder; to confuse, disturb, embarrass.
pervĕnĭo, īre, vēni, ventum, 4 *intr.* [*per*, quite; *venio*, to come], to reach, arrive at.
pēs, pĕdis, *m.* [akin to Gr. πούς, a foot], a foot.
pĕto, ĕre, īvi or ĭi, ītum, 3 *tr.*, to attack, repair to; to aim at, ask, seek, demand, direct one's course to.
pīlum, i, *n.*, the heavy javelin of the Roman infantry, javelin, dart.
Pīrustae, ārum, a people of Illyricum.
Plancus, i, *m.*, Lucius Munatius Plancus, one of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul.
planus, a, um, *adj.*, flat, level, plain.
plebs, plebis, *f.* [akin to Gr. πλῆθος, a multitude], the multitude, the common people, the mass.
plēnus, a, um, *adj.* [*pleo*, to fill], filled, full.
plērumque, *adv.* [*plerusque*], for the most part, mostly, commonly, very often.
plērusque ,āque, umque [rare in the sing.], the larger or greater part; **plerique,** very many, most, the majority.
plumbum, i, *n.*, lead; but **plumbum album,** white lead.
plūrĭmum, *adv.*, *supl.* of **multum,** very much, especially, exceedingly.
plūrĭmus, a, um, *supl.* of **multus** [*pleo*, to fill], (rare in sing.); plu., **plūrĭmi, ae, e,** the most, the greatest number, very many.
plus [*comp. adv.* of *multum*], more.
plus, plūris, [*comp.* of *multus*], more; plu. several, more.
poena, ae, *f.* [akin to Gr. ποινή], punishment, penalty, satisfaction.
pollĭcĕor, ēri, ĭtus sum, 2 *dep.* [for *potliceor*, fr. *pot*, *insep. pref.*, much; *liceor*, to bid], to hold forth, promise.
pondus, ĕris, *n.* [for *pendus*, fr. *pendo*, to weigh], a weight.
pōno, pōnĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsĭtum, 3 *tr.*, to put, place, pitch, appoint, assign.
pŏpŭlus, i, *m.* [prob. for *pol; pol-us*, fr. Gr. πολύς, many], the many, the people.

porto, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [prob. akin to Gr. *φέρω*], to carry, convey, transport.

portus, ūs, *m.* [akin to *porta*, a way], a harbor, port, haven.

posco, ĕre, pŏposci, 3 *tr.*, to ask, beg, request.

possum, posse, pŏtŭi, *int. irr.* [*potis*, able; *sum*, to be], to be able or powerful; to have influence or weight.

post, *adv.*, after, afterwards.

post, *prep.* with *Acc.*, after, behind; subsequent to, next to.

postĕā, *adv.* [prob. for *post-eam*], afterwards, after this, later.

postĕāquam, *adv.*, after that, after.

postĕrus, a, um, *adj.* [*post*], coming after, following, next ensuing; *comp.* **posterior**; *supl.* **postrēmus,** or **postŭmus.**

postpono, ĕre, posui, 3 *tr.* [*post*; *pono*, to place], to put off, postpone.

postquam, *adv.* [*post*; *quam*] after that, when.

postrīdĭe, *adv.* [*postero*; *die*], on the day after, on the following day, on the morrow.

pŏtestas, ātis, *f.* [*potens*], powerful, possibility, opportunity, power, ability.

prae, *prep.* with *Abl.*, before, in comparison with; for, on account of, because of, by reason of.

praeceps, ĭpĭtis, *adj.* [*prae*, forward; *caput*, the head], head foremost, precipitate; precipitous, steep.

praecĭpĭo, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, 3 *tr.* [*prae*; *capio*, to take], to take beforehand; enjoin, direct, order, command, bid.

praeda, ae, *f.*, booty, plunder, spoil, pillage.

praedor, āri, ātus sum, 1 *dep.* [*praeda*, plunder], to make booty, rob, spoil, plunder, pillage.

praefĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *tr. irr.* [*prae*, before; *fero*, to bear], to bear before; to prefer, choose rather, esteem more.

praefĭcĭo, ĕre, fēci, fectum, *tr.* [*prae*; *facio*, to make], to set over; to place in authority over.

praefīgo, ĕre, xi, ctum, 3 *tr.* [*prae*; *figo*, to fix], to set up in front.

praemitto, ĕre, missi, missum, 3 *tr.* [*prae*; *mitto*, to send], to send before; to send in advance.

praemium, i, *n.*, a reward, a prize.

praepăro, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*prae*; *paro*, to prepare], to get ready beforehand, to prepare.

praesens, entis, *adj.* [*prae*; *sum*], present.

praesertim, *adv.* [*prae*; *sero*, to arrange], especially, particularly.

praesĭdĭum, i, *n.* [*praesideo*, to sit before], protection, defence; garrison.

praesto, āre, stĭti, stĭtum, 1 *tr.* [*prae*; *sto*, to stand], to exhibit, manifest, supply; to fulfil, discharge, perform, execute.

praesum, esse, fŭi, *int. irr.* [*prae; sum,* to be], to be before, be in command of, to have the charge of, preside.
praeter, *prep.* with *Acc.*, past by, beyond; except.
praeterea, *adv.* [prob. *praeter; eam, Acc.* sing. fem. of *is*], besides, beyond this, moreover.
praetermitto, ĕre, missi, missum, 3 *tr.* [*praeter,* past; *mitto,* to send], to let go, let pass; to pass by or over.
prĕmo, ĕre, pressi, pressum, 3 *tr.*, to press, press hard upon; to oppress, harass.
prĕtĭum, i, *n.* [akin to Gr. πρίασθαι, to buy], price, worth, value.
prīdĭe, *adv.* [*prior; die*], on the day before.
prīmo, *adv.* [*primus*], at first, in the first place.
prīmum—see **prīmo**; **quam primum,** as soon as possible.
prīmus, a, um, *adj.* [*prae,* before], *supl.* of *prior* (no positive), first, the first.
princeps, cĭpis, *adj.* and *subst. m.* and *f.* [*primus; capio*], first in rank or order; chief, a chieftain, prince, chief, or leading man.
prĭor, us, *comp. adj.* [*prae,* before], former, previous, ancient.
prĭus, *adv.*, before, sooner than.
prīvātim, *adv.* [*privatus,* private], privately, one by one.
prīvātus, a, um, *adj.* [*privo,* to make private], private, belonging to an individual.
prō, *prep.* with *Abl.* [akin to Gr. πρό], before, in front of; instead of, in the place of, for; as, just as, for.
prōcēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, 3 *intr.* [*pro,* forward; *cedo,* to go forward], to advance.
prŏcul, *adv.* [*procello,* to drive away], at a distance, far off.
prōdo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, 3 *tr.* [*pro; do,* to give], to give up, surrender, betray.
prodūco, ĕre, duxi, ductum, 3 *tr.* [*pro; duco,* to lead], to lead forward, prolong.
proelior, āri, ātus sum, 1 *dep.* [*proelium,* battle], to join battle; to engage, fight, contend.
proelĭum, i, *n.*, a battle, engagement, fight.
prŏfectĭo, ōnis, *f.* [*proficiscor,* to set out], a going away, departure, march.
prōfĭcio, ĕre, fēci, fectum, 3 *tr.* [*pro; facio,* to make], to effect, bring about, accomplish.
prŏfiscor, i, profectus sum, 3 *dep.* [*pro; facio*], to set out, go, proceed.
prŏfĭtĕor, ēre, fessus sum, 2 *dep.* [*pro,* openly; *fateor,* to own], to declare publicly, confess openly, acknowledge, profess, promise.
prŏfŭgĭo, ĕre, fūgi, fŭgĭtum, 3 *intr.* [*pro,* forth; *fugio,* to flee], to flee forth or away, escape.

prōgrĕdĭor, i, gressus sum, 3 *dep.* [*pro; gradior,* to step], to go forward, advance.
prŏhĭbĕo, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum, 2 *tr.* [*pro; habeo,* to hold], to hold back; to check, hinder, restrain, prevent.
prōinde, *adv.* [*pro; inde,* hence], therefore, accordingly.
prōjĭcĭo, ĕre, jēci, jectum, 3 *tr.* [*pro; jacio,* to cast], to throw or cast forward; to fling away.
prōnuntĭo, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*pro; nuntio,* to announce], to make known; proclaim.
prope, *adv.*, near, close to; nearly about; *comp.* **propius**; *supl.* **proxĭme.**
prŏpe, *prep.* with *Acc.*, near, near by.
propello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum, 3 *tr.* [*pro; pello,* to drive], to drive forward, urge on; to put to flight, rout.
prŏpinquus, a, um, *adj.* [*prope; hinc*], near, neighboring, near at hand, nearly related to.
propono, ĕre, posŭi, ĭtum [*pro; pono,* to place], to propose, set forth.
prŏprius, *adv. comp.* See **prŏpe.**
propter, *prep.* with *Acc.*, on account of, by reason of.
proptĕrĕā, *adv.* [*propter; eam, Acc.* sing. fem. of *is*], therefore, on this account, for that reason.
proptĕrĕa, quod, because that, because.
prōpugno, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*pro,* forth; *pugno,* to fight], to go or rush forth to fight; to make sallies or sorties.
prōsĕquor, i, sĕquūtus sum, 3 *dep.* [*pro; sequor,* to follow], to follow after, pursue.
prospectus, ūs, *m.* [*prospicio,* to look out for], sight, view.
prospĭcĭo, ĕre, spexi, spectum, 3 *tr.* [*pro; specio,* to see], to look forward; to provide for, take care of, consult for.
prōtĭnus, *adv.* [*pro; tenus,* as far as], forthwith, immediately, instantly.
prŏvĕho, i, vectus sum, 3 *dep.* [*pro; veho,* to carry], to carry forward; to bear or drive away.
prōvĕnĭo, īre, vēni, ventum, 4 *tr.* [*pro; venio,* to come], to come forth, thrive, grow, turn out.
prōvĭdĕo, ēre, vīdi, vīsum, 2 *tr.* [*pro; video,* to see], to foresee; to see to, look after, provide.
proxĭme, *adv.* [*proximus*], nearest, very near; very recently.
proxĭmus, a, m [*supl.* of *propior*], nearest, next; following.
publĭce, *adv.* [*publicus,* public], publicly, on behalf of the State.
publĭcus, a, um, *adj.* [for *populicus,* fr. *populus*], public, belonging to the State, common.
pugna, ae, *f.* [*pugus,* to fight], a battle, contest, engagement.

pugno, āre, āvi, ātum [*pugna*, a fight], to fight, engage, contend.
pulvis, ĕris, *m.*, dust.
purgo, āre, āvi, ātum [*purus*, pure], to purify, cleanse.
pŭto, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*putus*, clean, clear], to make clean, settle (hence), to think, consider, esteem.

Q

quad-ra-ginta, *num. adj. indecl.* [*quattuor*], forty.
quadingenti, ae, a, *num. adj.* [*quattuor; centum*] four hundred.
quaero, ĕre, sīvi, sītum, 3 *tr.*, to seek, ask, enquire.
quaestor, ōris, *m.* [*quaero*, to seek], a questor; a Roman magistrate. See note.
quam, *adv.* [adverbial *Acc.* of *quis*], in what manner, how; as, than; after *comp.* than, with *superl.* possible, as possible; **quam maxi, mus,** the greatest possible; **quam, primum,** as soon as possible.
quantum, *adv.* [*quantus*], as much as, as far as.
quantus, a, um, *adj.*, how great, how much, as great as, as much as; with *comp.* **quanto - - - tanto,** the - - - the.
quāque= **quā que,** why, wherefore; for which cause.
quārē, *adv.* [*Abl.* sing. of *quis; res*].
quartus, a, um, *num. adj.* [*quatuor*], fourth.
quăsi, as if, just as if, as it were, though.
quatuor, *num. adj. indecl.* [akin to Gr. τέσσ(ττ)αρες], four.
quĕ, *conj.*, always enclitic, *i.e.*, appended to another word [akin to Gr. τε], and; **que - - - que; que - - - et,** both - - - and; as well - - - as.
quĕror, i, questus sum, 3 *dep.*, to complain.
qui, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, who, which, what, that; **ut, qui,** as one who, like one who. See H. 445, 1–9, 453.
quīcunque, quaecunque, quodcunque, *indef. pron.*, whoever, whichever, whatever, whatsoever.
quīdam, quedam, quoddam, *indef. pron.*, some, particular, certain.
quidem, *adv.*, indeed, at least, certainly, forsooth; **ne - - - quidem,** not - - - even.
quin, *conj.* [*qui; ne*], that not, but that, that.
quin etiam, nay even, moreover.
quindĕcim, *num. adj. indecl.* [*quinque; decem*], fifteen.
quingenti, ae, a, *num. adj.* [*quinque; centum*], five hundred.
quinque, *num. adj. indecl.* [akin to Gr. πέντε], five.

quintus, a, um, *num. adj.* [*quinque*, five], fifth.
quis, quae, quid [used substantively], **qui, quae, quod,** [used adjectively]—1. *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what? 2. *indef. pron.* [usually after *ne*, *si*, *nisi*], any, some, any one, some one, anything, something.
quisquam, quaequam, quidquam or **quicquam,** *indef. pron.*, any, some, any one, anything.
quisque, quaeque, quodque or **quidque,** *indef. pron.* [*qui*, who; suffix, *que*], each, every, any; whoever it be.
quisquis (no feminine), **quidquid, quicquid** and **quodquod,** *indef. pron.* [*quis* reduplicated], whoever, whatever.
quō *adv.* [according to some, *Abl.*; to others, for **quom,** old form of **quem**—*Acc.* sing. mas. of *qui*, who], whither, where; to the end that, so that, that.
quōad [poss. *quom-ad*], so long as, till, until, to the extent that.
quod, *conj.* [adverbial *Acc.* sing. of *qui*], in that, because that, that.
quo-mĭnus, *conj.* [*quo*; *minus*], with subj., after verbs of hindering, preventing, &c., that not, from.
quoque, *conj.*, also, too, likewise.
quot, *num. adj. indecl.*, how many; as many as.
quŏtannis, *adv.* [*quot*, *annis*, *Abl.* plu. of *annus*], every year, yearly.
quotīdiānus, a, um, *adj.* [*quotidie*], daily, every day.
quŏtīdĭe, *adv.* [*quot*; *die*, *Abl.* sing. of *dies*], daily, every day.
quam [old form, *quom*], *conj.* when, as, after, as soon as; while, because, since although.
quam - - - tum, while, - - - so also; not only - - - but also both - - . and. See H. 518, S.

R

rārus, a, um, *adj.*, far apart, here and there, dispersed, in small detachments, or equals.
rătĭo ōnis, *f.* [re or to think], a reckoning, account; a mode, method, respect, regard, repeat, care.
re, or **red,** *insep. prep.*, back again, in return, contrary, against. H. 338, 3,
rebellĭo, ōnis, *f.* [*re*; *bellum*, war].
rĕcĭpĭo, ĕre cēpi, ceptum, 3, *tr.* [*re*; *capio*, to take] to take (one's self) back again, retire, withdraw, to receive.
recūso, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*re*; *causa*, a cause], to decline, refuse, shrink from.

rĕdĕo, ire, īvi, or **ĭi, ĭtum,** [*re; eo*, to go], to go back, turn back, return.

rĕdĭtus, ūs, *m.* [*redeo*, to return], a returning, return.

rĕdūco, ĕre, duxi ductum, 3 *tr.* [*re; duco*, to lead], to lead, conduct back.

rĕfĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum, *tr. in.* [*re; fero*, to bear], to bear back, bring back; to return, repay; to report, relate.

rĕfĭcĭo, ĕre, fēci, fectum, 3 *tr.* [*re; facio*, to make], to make, to make again, renew, to repair, refit.

rĕgĭo, ōnis, *f.* [*rego*, to rule], a tract, territory, region.

rejĭcĭo, ere, jēci, jectum, 3. *tr.* [*re; jacio*, to cast], to throw, cast, hurl back; to drive back, beat back, force back.

rĕlĭgĭo, ōnis, *f.* [*religo*, to bind], religion, *pl.* religious scruples.

relinquo, ere, līqui, lictum, 3, *tr.* [*re*, back; *linquo*, to leave], to leave behind, abandon, omit, leave.

rĕlĭquus, a, une, *adj.* [*relinquo*], remaining, rest.

sub, rĕlĭqui, orum, *m.* the rest, the others.

rĕmăneo, ēre, mansi, [*re*, behind, *maneo*, to remain], to remain, stay behind.

rĕmĭgro, āre, āvi, ātum, 1, *tr.* [*re; migro*, to move] to remove back, to go back, journey.

rĕmissus, a, um, 1 *part.* [*remitto*], 2 *adj.*, mild, not severe; *comp.* **remissior**; *supl.* **remiss-issĭmus.**

rĕmitto, ere, misi, missum, 3 *tr.* [*re; mitto*, to send], to send back, return.

rĕmŏvĕo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum, 2 *tr.* [*re; moveo*, to move], to remove back, withdraw, send away.

rēmus, i, *m.*, an oar.

rĕnuntĭo, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*re; nuntio*, to bring word], to bring bock word; to report.

rĕpello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum, 3 *tr.* [*re; pello*, to drive], to drive back, repel, repulse.

repente, *adv.* [*repens*, sudden], suddenly, on a sudden.

repentīnus, *adj.* [*repens*], sudden, unexpected.

rĕpĕrĭo, īre, pĕri, pertum, 4 *tr.* [*re; pario*, to produce], to produce again; to find out, discover, ascertain.

rĕporto, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*re; porto*, to carry], to carry back, convey back.

rēs, rĕi, *f.* [akin to ῥῆμα, fr. ῥέω, to speak], a thing, affair, matter.

res, mīlĭtāris, military matter, the art of warfare.

res, publica, rei, publicae, the common weal, the state, republic.

resisto, ĕre, stĭti, 3 *intr.* [*re*, against; *sto*, to stand], to stand against, withstand, resist, oppose.

rĕtrăho, ere, traxi, tractum, 3 *tr.* [*re; traho*, to draw]; **reverto, ĕre, ii, sum,** 3 *intr.* [*re; verto*, to turn]; and **revertor, ī, versus sum,** 3 *dep.* [*re; verto*, to turn one's self], return, turn back. *Revertor* supplies the tenses of the present system, and the part *reversus.*
rĕvŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*re; voco*, to call], to call back, recall, withdraw.
Rhēnus, i, *m.*, the Rhenus [now Rhine].
rīpa, ae, *f.*, the bank of a river.
Rōmānus, a, um, *adj.* [*Roma*, Rome], Roman; *subst.* **Rōmani, orum,** *m.*, the Romans.
rōta, ae, *f.* [*ruo*, to run], a wheel.
Rŭfus, i, *m.* [*rufus*, red; red-haired]; **Publius Sulpicius Rufus,** one of Caesar's lieutenants.
rursus, *adv.* [contr. fr. *revorsus*, turned back], again, afresh, anew, in turn.

S

Săbīnus, i, *m.*, **Quintus Tiburius Sabinus,** one of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul.
saepe, *adv.*, often, frequently.
săgitta, ae, *f.*, an arrow.
sătis, *adv.*, *adj.*, and *adv.*, 1. sufficient; sufficiently, enough; moderately, tolerably.
sătisfăcio, ĕre, fēci, factum, 3 *intr.* [*satis; facio*], to satisfy, give satisfaction, make amends, excuse one's self.
scapa, ae, *f.* [Gr. σκαφη, fr. σκάπτω, to dig out], a dig-out, skiff.
sĕcius, *sec.* **secus.**
sēcum - - - cum se.
secundus, a, um, *adj.*, [*sequor*, to follow], second; favorable, propitious, favorable.
secus, *adv.*, *prob. fr.* **sequor,** to follow, otherwise *comp.* **sĕcius, nehile secuis,** none the less, nevertheless, notwithstanding.
sed, *conj.*, [same word as *sed-sine*, without], but, nevertheless; **non solum - - - sed etiam,** not only - - - but also, **segonax ācis,** *m. Segonax*, a king of Kent.
sēmita, ae, *f.* a narrow way, foot-path.
semper, *adv.*, always, continually.
sĕnātus. us, *m.* [*senex*, an old man], the senate.
sententia, ae, *f.* [*sentio*, to perceive], opinion, thought, purpose, decision.
sentio, ire, sensi, sensum, 4, *tr.* to perceive, observe.
septim, *num.*, *adj.*, [*indcl*, akin to Gr. ἑπτά], seven,

septentriōnes, um, *m. pl.*, [see note for derivations] the seven stars that form the constellation called the wain, the north; the north pole.
septĭmus, a, um, *adj.* [*septem*], the seventh.
sĕquor, i, secutus sum, 3 *dep.* [akin to Gr. ἕπομαι], to follow in pursuit, pursue.
sĕro, sēvi, sătum, 3 *tr.*, to sow, plant.
servĭo, īre, īvi, ītum, 4 *intr.* [*servus*, a slave], to serve, be a servant of.
servo, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.*, to save, keep, preserve.
seu. See **sive.**
sex, *num. adj. indecl.*, six.
sexcenti, ae, a, *num. adj. indecl.* [*sex*; *centum*], six hundred.
si, *conj.* (Gr. εἰ], if.
sīc, *adv.*, so, thus.
siccĭtas, ātis, *f.* [*siccus*, dry], dryness.
signum, i, *n.*, a sign, mark; a military standard or ensign.
silva, ae, *f.* [akin to Gr. ὕλη], a wood, forest.
silvestris, e, *adj.* [*silva*], woody, overgrown woods.
sĭmĭlis, e, *adj.* [akin to Gr. ὅμοιος], resembling, like, similar.
sĭmul, *adv.*, together, at once, at the same time.
sin, *conj.* [*si*; *ne*], but if, if however.
sĭne, *prep.* with *Abl.*, without.
singillātim, *adv.* [*singuli*], one by one, singly, severally.
singŭlāris, e, *adj.* [*singuli*], remarkable, extraordinary.
singŭli, ae, a, *distr. adj.* [akin to εἷς], separate, single.
sĭnister, tra, trum, *adj.*, left; unfavorable, unlucky.
sīve (contr. *seu*), *conj.* [*si*, if; *ve*, or], or if; *sive* [*seu* - - - *sive* (*seu*) whether - - - or].
socius, i, *m.*, an ally, confederate, companion.
sōl, sōlis, *m.* [akin to Gr. ἥλιος], the sun.
sollĭcĭtāri, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*sollicitus*, anxious], to stir up, instigate, tamper with.
sōlus, a, um, *adj.* [Ger. *ias*, Dat. *i*], alone, one, sole.
solvo, ĕre, solvi, solūtum, 3 *tr.* [*se*, apart; *luo*, to loosen], to loosen, untie (with *naves*), to weigh anchor, put to sea.
spătĭum, i, *n.* [Gr. σπάδιον = στάδιον], space, distance, extent; period, interval.
spĕcĭes, ēi, *f.* [*specio*, to see], appearance.
specto, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [freq. of *spicio*, to look], to look, lie facing, be situated towards.
spĕcŭlātōrĭus, a, um, *adj.* [*speculator*, a scout], of or belonging to a spy or scout.

spēs, ĕi, *f.*, hope, expectation.
spŏlio, āre, āvi, ātum. 1 *tr.* [*spolium*, spoil], to rob, plunder, pillage; to deprive, despoil.
spontis, *genitive;* and **sponte,** *Abl. f.* [akin to *spondeo*], voluntarily, of one's own free will.
stăbīlĭtas, ātis, *f.* [*stabilis*, firm], steadiness, firmness.
stătim, *adv.* [*sto*, to stand], immediately, at once.
statio, ōnis, *f.* [*sto*, to stand], a station, post, outpost.
stătŭo, ĕre, ŭi, ūtum, 3 *tr.* [*status*, fr. *sto*], to decide, resolve, determine.
stipendinm,
sto, āre, steti, stătum, 1 *intr.* [akin to Gr. *στάω* (*ἵστημι*)], to stand.
strĕpĭtus, ūs, *m.* [*strepo*, to make a noise], a noise.
stŭdĕo, ēre, ŭi, 2 *int.* [akin to Gr. *σπουδή*, haste], to be eager for; desirous for.
stŭdĭum, i, *n.* [*studeo*], eagerness; zeal, energy.
subdūco, ĕre, duxi, ductum, 3 *tr.* [*sub; duco*, to draw], to draw ashore, haul up.
subductio, ōnis, *f.* [*subduco*], a hauling up, drawing on shore.
sŭbĭto, *adv.* [*subitus*, sudden], suddenly; on a sudden.
subjĭcio, ĕre, jēci, jectum, 3 *tr.* [*sub; jacio*, to throw], to throw or place under; to expose.
sublātus, *per. part. pass.* of **tollo.**
subminĭstro, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*sub; ministro*, to supply], to supply, furnish.
submitto, ere, mīsi, missum, 3 *tr.* [*sub; mitto*, to send], to send, dispatch.
subsĕquor, i, quūtus sum, 3 *defr.* [*sub. sequor*], to follow close after, follow immediately.
subsĭdĭum, i, *n.*, [*sub; sedeo*, to sit], aid, assistance, succor; a support.
subsisto, ĕre, stĭti sistum, 3 *intr.* [*sub; sisto*, to stand], to hold out.
sub sum, esse, fŭi, *intr. in.* [*sub; sum.*, to be], to be beside or near; to be at hand.
subvĕnĭo. īre, vēni, ventum, 4 *intr.* [*sub*, behind; venio, to come], to come to the aid of; aid, succor.
succēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum, 3 *intr.* [*sub; cedo*, to come], to come after or in the place of; to succeed.
succendo, di, sum. 3 *tr.* [*sub; candeo*, to kindle], to set fire to, kindle.
succīdo, ĕre, cīdi, cīsum, 3 *tr.* [*sub; caedo*, to cut], to cut down, ravage, destroy.
succurro, ĕre, curri, and **cŭcurri, cursum,** 3 *intr.* [*sub; curro*, to run], to run under, to run to one's aid; to aid, assist, relieve, succor.

sŭdes, [*Nom.*, not found], **sudis,** *f.*, a stake, pile.
sui, sibĭ se, *pron. per.; sing.*, *plu.*, of himself, herself, themselves, &c.; **sese** is a reduplicated form of **se.**
sum, esse, fŭi, *intr. irr.*, [akin to Gr. ἐιμί], to be, exist, be present with *Gent.*, to pertain, to belong to; with two *Datives*, to serve, afford, contribute; with *Dat.* of *Poss*, to have.
summa, ae, *f.* [*summus*, highest], the sum, whole, aggregate.
summŏvĕo, eve, mōvi, motum, 2 *tr.* [*sub; moveo*, to move], to draw off.
summus, a, um, *supl.* See **sŭpĕrus.**
sŭmo, ere, sumpsi, sumptum, 3 *tr.*, to employ, speed, undertake.
sŭpĕrĭor, us, *comp.* See *superus.*
sŭpĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*super.*, above], to overcome, subdue, vanquish.
sŭpĕrus, a, um, *adj.*, [*super.*, above], being above, or over, upper, *comp.* **superior us, summus,** *a.* **um,** [and **supreonus**], the highest almost, greatest.
supplĭcātio, onis, *f.*, a religious festival, day of thanksgiving. See note iv. 38.
suprā, *adv.* [for *supera se. parte*], before, above, previously.
suspīcor are, ātus sum, *dep.* [*sub; spicco*], to suspect, distrust, mistrust.
suspicio, spexi, spicĕre, spectum, 3 *tr.* [*sub: spiceo*, to spy], to suspect.
surpīcĭo, onis, *f.* [*suspicor*], mistrust, suspicion.
sustĭnĕo, ēre, ŭi, tentum, 3 *tr.* [*sub*, *teneo*, to hold], to hold up; sustain, bear up against, withstand.
sŭus, a, um, *poss. pron.* [*sui*], of, or belonging to himself, &c., his own, &c.; **sŭe,** *sub.*, *pl.*, *m.*, one's friends, soldiers, party, &c.

T

tālĕa, ae, *f.*, rod, bar; iron bars or tullies.
tam, *adv.*, so, so very; to such a degree.
tămen, *adv.*, notwithstanding; nevertheless, yet, still, at least.
Tămēsis, is, *m.*, the river Thames.
tămen-etsi, *conj.* [*tamen; etsi*], though, notwithstanding.
tango, ĕre, tĕtĭgi, tactum, 3 *tr.* [akin to θιγγανω], to touch, border upon, be contiguous to.
tantŭlus, a, um, *adj.* [dimin. of *tantus*], so much, so little, so trifling.
tantus, a, um. so much, so great; **tantum**—1. a *subs.*, so much; **tantum - - - quantum,** so much - - - as; **tantum**—2. *adv.*, only, merely, alone.
tarde, *adv.* [*tardus*], slowly, tardily; *comp.* **tardius.**
Tăxĭmăgŭlus, i, *m.*, Taximagulus. a king of Kent.
tēlum, i, *n.* [poss. akin to Gr. τῆλε, afar off], a dart, missile, javelin.

tĕmĕre, *adv.*, rashly; easily, readily.
tĕmo, ōnis, *m.* [akin to Gr. τεμ-νω, to cut], a beam, the pole of a chariot.
tempestās, ātis, *f.* [*tempus*] a time, season; storm, tempest.
tempus, ŏris, *n.* [akin to Gr. τεμ-νω, to cut], time, season: *ad tempus*, at the right time.
tĕnĕo, ēre, ŭi, tum, 2 *tr.*, to hold, have, possess; to hold firm, detain; *se tenere*, to keep one's self, to remain.
tergum, i, *n.*, the back; *terga vertere*, to turn the back; to flee; *post tergum*, in the rear.
terra, ae, *f.* [akin to Gr. ἔρα], the earth; the land, soil, ground.
terror, ōnis *m.* [*terreo*, to terrify], fear, terror, alarm, apprehension.
tertĭus, a, um, *num., adj., ord.* [*ter.*], the third.
testūdo, ĭnĭs, *f.* [*testa*, a shell], a tortoise; a covering. See note.
tĭmĕo, ēre, ŭi, - - - 2 *tr.*, to be afraid of; to fear.
Tĭturĭus, i, *m.*, Quintus Titurius Sabinus, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
Tĭtus, is, *m.*, Titus, a Roman name.
tŏlĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.*
tollo, ĕre, sustŭli, sublatum, 3 *tr.*, to lift up; to weigh; raise; convey away.
tormentum, i, *n.* [*torqueo*, to twist], an engine for hurling missiles.
tot, *num., adj., indcl.*, so many.
totus, a, um, *adj.*, all, the whole of.
tranquillĭtās, ātis, *f.* [*tranquillus*, calm], quietness, stillness, calmness.
trans, *prefr.*, gov., *acc.*, beyond across, over.
transĕo, īre, īvi, ĭtum, *tr. in.*, [*trans*; *eo.*] to go, cross, or to pass over.
transjĕctus, ūs, *m.* [*transjicio*, to cross over].
transjĭcĭo, ĕre, jēci, jectum, 3 *tr.* [*trans*; *facio*, to throw], to thrnw through; to pierce, thrust.
transmissus, us, *m.* [*transmitto*, to send over], a passage.
transporto, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*trans*; *porto*, to carry], to carry, or convey across; to transport.
transrhēnānus, a, um, *adj.* [*trans*; *Rhenus*, the Rhine], on the other side of the Rhine. **transrhēnāni, ōrum,** *m. sub*, those living beyond the Rhine.
Trebōnĭus, i, *m.*, Caius Trebonius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.
trĕcenti, ae, a, *num. adj.* [*tres*; *centum*], three hundred.
Trēvĭri, ōrum, *m.*, the Treviri, a people of Gaul.
trĭbūnus, i, *m.* [*tribus*, a tribe], a tribune, *i.e.*, one who presides over a tribe; *militum tribunus*, a military tribune. See note.

trĭbŭo, ĕre, ŭi, ūtum, 3 *tr.*, to give, bestow, grant.
trĭginta, *num. adj. indecl.*, thirty.
Trinobantes, um, *m. pl.*, the Trinobantes, a people of Britain.
trĭpartīto, *adv.* [*tripartitus*], in three divisions, or parts.
trĭquĕtrus, a, um, *adj.*, three-cornered, triangular.
truncus, i, *m.*, the trunk or stock of a tree.
tŭeor, ēre, tŭĭtus, sum, 2 *dep.*, to protect, defend.
tŭli, *perf. ind.*, *Act* of *fero.*
tum, *adv.* [*poss*, akin the Gr. $\tau\upsilon$], then, at that time:
tŭmultus, ūs, *m. prob.*, akin to *tumeo*, to swell], an uproar, disturbance, insurrection.
turma, ae, *f.* a troop, or division of cavalry, *i. e.* of thirsty men. See note.

U

ŭbi, *adv.*, in which place, where ; when. **ubī prīmum,** as soon as.
ullus, a, um, *Gen.* **ullīus,** *adj.*, any, anyone. H. 151, S.
ultĕrĭor, ĭius, *adj.*, *comp.* [*ultra*], farther, further, *sup.* **ultimus.**
ūnā, *adv.* [adverbial *Abl.* of *unus*], together ; in company.
unde, *adv.*, whence, from which place,
undĭque, *adv.* [*unde* : *que*], from all parts, from all sides, everywhere.
ūnĭversus, a, um, *adj.* [*unus* ; *versus*, turned], all ; all taken collectively ; the whole.
ūnus, ā, um, *adj.* [*Gen.* **unīus,** *Dat.* **uni,** one, only alone, *ad annum*, to one, *i. e.* man, *uno tempore*, at the same time.
ūsus, ūs, *m.* [*utor*, to use], use, employment ; skill, purchase, experience : advantage.
ut or **ŭti,** *conj.* that — to with *Eng. Inf.*, so that, though, although ; after verbs of fearing, that, not, 2 *adv.*, as, inasmuch as, when.
ŭterque, ŭtrăque, utrumque, *adj.* [*uter*, which of the two ; *que*, and], both, each.
utor, i, ūsus sum, 3 *dep.* [with *Abl.*], to use, make use of, employ, practice.
uxor, ōris, *f.*, a wife, spouse.

V

vădum, i, *n.* [vado, go to], a shallow shoal.
vălĕo, ēre, ŭi, - - - - 2 *intr.*, to be strong, or powerful, to possess weight, be effectual.
vasto, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.* [*vastus*, waste], to lay waste, devastate, ravage

vectīgal, *alis., n.* [*vectus* from *veho.*]. tax, impost, tribute.
vectōrĭus, a, um, *adj.* [*veho,* to carry], suitable for carrying burdens; *vectorium navigium,* a carrying vessel, *i. e.* a transport.
vel, *conj.* [akin to *volo, vel, le,* to wish], or, or indeed, **vel, - - - vel,** either, - - - or.
vĕnĕtĭcus, a, um, pertaining to the *veneti,* a people of Gallia Celtica; Venetian.
vĕnĭo, īre, vēni, ventum, 4 *inter,* to come, *impers, ventum erat,* it had come, *i. e.* by them,=they had come.
ventĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *intr.* [freq. of *venio*], to come often, keep coming.
ventus, i, *m.*, the wind.
vergo, ĕre, ——, ——, *intr.*, to incline or turn towards, to lie or be situated towards.
vēro, *adv.* [*verus,* true], but in fact, but indeed, however.
verto, ĕre, versi, versum, 3 *intr.*, to turn.
vestĭo, īre, īvi or **ĭi, ītum,** 4 *tr.* [*vestis,* a garment], to clothe.
vĕto, āre, ŭi, ĭtum, 1 *tr.*, to forbid.
vexo, āre, āvi, ātum, 2 *tr.*, to harass, ravage.
vĭă, ae, *f.*, [*veho,* to carry], a way, a road.
vĭdeō, ēre, vīdi, vīsum, 2 *tr.*, to see, behold, observe; comprehend; *Pass.*, to be seen; to seem.
vĭgĭlĭă, ae, *f.* [*vigilo,* to watch], a watch, *i.e.*, by night.
vīginti, *num. adj. indecl.* [for *bi-ginti*], twenty.
vincŭlum, i, *n.* [*vincio,* to bind], a bond, chain, fetters.
virgo, ĭnis, *f.*, a maiden, virgin.
virtūs, ūtis, *f.* [*vir,* a man], manliness, courage, bravery, valor.
vis, vis, [*pl.* **vīres, vīrĭum**], strength, power, force, impetuosity.
vita, ae, *f.* [for *viv-ta,* fr. *vivo,* to live], life.
vīto, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.*, to shun, avoid.
vitrum, i, *n.*, wood. See note.
vīvo, ĕre, vixi, victum, 3 *intr.* [akin to Gr. *βιοω,*], to live, live upon.
vix, *adv.*, with difficulty, scarcely.
vŏco, āre, āvi, ātum, 1 *tr.*, to call, summon; name, denominate.
vŏlo, velle, vŏlŭi, *irr.* [akin to *βουλομαι,* to wish], to wish, desire; purpose, intend.
Volusēnus, i, *m.*, Caius Volusenus Quadratus.
vox, vōcis, *f.* [*voco,* to call], the voice, a word.
vulnus, ĕris, *n.*, a wound.

[illegible] in OTR [illegible]
[illegible]
[illegible] Ch. 54. end

CANADA PUBLISHING COMPANY